

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

ULTIMATE GETTING STARTED WITH
JAPANESE

JapanesePod101.com



innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

BONUS
+ 3-MINUTE
JAPANESE
SERIES



Basic Bootcamp

Self Introduction/Basic Greetings

1

Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	2

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
こんにちは	こんにちは	kon'nichi wa	hello
わたし	わたし	watashi	I, me
はじめまして	はじめまして	hajimemashite	Nice to meet you.
どうぞ	どうぞ	d zo	please
よろしくお願ひします	よろしくおねがいしま す	yoroshiku onegai shimasu	Nice to meet you.

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

みなさん、こんにちは。	Hello, everyone.
わたしはカウンセラーです。	I'm a counselor.
こんにちは。はじめまして。	Hello. Nice to meet you.
太郎の母です。どうぞよろしく。	I'm Taro's mother. Please be nice to me.
田中太郎です。よろしくおねがいします。	I'm Taro Tanaka. It's a pleasure to meet you.

Grammar Points

Basic Bootcamp #1: Self Introduction/Basic Greetings

The Focus of This Lesson is to Teach You Some Japanese Essentials to Get You Speaking Right from Your First Lesson.

Today's phrases are used when we introduce ourselves:

A: こんにちは。はじめまして。私は田中です。

A: Kon'nichi wa. Hajimemashite. Watashi wa Tanaka desu.

A: "Hello. Nice to meet you. My name is Tanaka."

B: 私は鈴木です。よろしくお願ひします。

B: Watashi wa Suzuki desu. Yoroshiku o-negai shimasu.

B: "My name is Suzuki. Nice to meet you."

Vocabulary and Lesson Notes



こんにちは

Kon'nichi wa

This phrase is the Japanese equivalent of "hello" and can be used at any time of day.

わたし

Watashi

The word watashi (わたし) means "I" or "me." This is a polite way for both males and females to refer to themselves.

は

wa

"Wa" is a particle that follows the topic you are going to be talking about (often called the topic marking particle). Think of it as the equivalent to "as for" in English.

です

Desu

This word is called a copula and refers to one type of "to be" verb. In the above conversation, we showed the construction as watashi wa [name] desu (わたしは [name]です, My name is [name]). Desu will always come at the end of a sentence. For more information on the copula, please see Conjugation Lesson #1.

はじめまして

Hajimemashite

This phrase means "nice to meet you," and we use it when meeting someone for the first time. We often follow this phrase with the next one.

よろしくお願ひします

Yoroshiku onegai shimasu

We often use this phrase when meeting people for the first time. There is no English equivalent, but literally, this phrase roughly translates to, "Please look favorably upon me." Using this phrase shows respect for the person you are meeting, and also indicates that you are looking forward to a good relationship with them. Whether you are meeting one person or fifty, using this phrase will make a great impression.

To make this phrase even more polite, you can attach the word *dozo* (どうぞ) to the beginning to create *Dozo yoroshiku onegai shimasu* (どうぞよろしくお願ひします). On the other hand, if you are speaking to someone who is much lower in status than yourself, you can shorten this phrase to simply *yoroshiku* (よろしく).

[Names in Japanese](#)

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

In Japanese, we give our full names by saying or writing our last name before our first name. In formal situations, it is common for people to introduce themselves using their full name or only their last name. When addressing other people you are not familiar with or are higher than you in status, it is important to attach the suffix san (さん) to their name. Be careful, however, not to attach san (さん) to your own name!



Basic Bootcamp

Basic Japanese sentence structure

2

Vocabulary	2
Grammar Points	2

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
日本	にほん	Nihon	Japan
日本人	にほんじん	Nihon-jin	Japanese
アメリカ	アメリカ	Amerika	America
アメリカ人	あめりかじん	Amerika-jin	American (Nationality)
イギリス	イギリス	Igirisu	England
イギリス人	イギリスじん	Igirisu-jin	English, British (nationality)
中国	ちゅうごく	Ch goku	China
中国人	ちゅうごくじん	Ch goku-jin	China (nationality)

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

日本に住んでいます。

夏子は日本人です。

アメリカは大きいです。

ホワイトさんはアメリカ人です。

イギリスのクッキーはおいしい。

私はイギリス人です。

私の出身は中国です。

ヨウメイさんは中国人です。

I live in Japan.

Natsuko is Japanese.

The U.S. is huge.

Mr. White is American.

British cookies are delicious.

I'm British.

I'm from China.

Yao Ming is Chinese.

Grammar Points

Basic Bootcamp #2: Basic Japanese Sentence Structure

The Focus of This Lesson is Talking About Yourself in Japanese.

In this lesson, we learned the following phrases:

A: **こんにちは。私はナオミです。日本人です。**

A: Kon'nichi wa. Watashi wa Naomi desu. Nihon-jin desu.

A: "Hello, I'm Naomi. I'm Japanese."

B: **こんにちは。私はピーターです。アメリカ人です。**

B: Kon'nichi wa. Watashi wa Peter desu. Amerika-jin desu.



B: "Hello, I'm Peter. I'm American."

Talking About Yourself

To talk about one's nationality, you add the word for person, jin (人) to the name of a country. Let's take a look at some examples.

Countries and Nationalities:

1. **日本**
Nihon
"Japan"
2. **日本人**
Nihon-jin
"Japanese person"
3. **アメリカ**
Amerika
"America"
4. **アメリカ人**
Amerika-jin
"American person"

Other Countries and Nationalities:

1. **イギリス**
Igirisu
"England"
2. **イギリス人**
Igirisu-jin
"English person"
3. **中国**
Ch goku
"China"
4. **中国人**
Ch goku-jin
"Chinese person"

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Talking About Nationality:

1. **(私は) アメリカ人です。**

(Watashi wa) amerika-jin desu.

I'm American.

Note that when talking about yourself, you don't need to say watashi wa if it's already understood that you are talking about yourself. In that case, your nationality plus desu is enough.

More examples:

1. **私たちはアメリカ人です。**

Watashi-tachi wa amerika-jin desu.

"We're American."

2. **あなたは日本人です。**

Anata wa nihon-jin desu.

"You're Japanese."



Basic Bootcamp

Useful Phrases for Learning

3

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

Basic Bootcamp #3: Useful Phrases for Learning Japanese

The Focus of This Lesson is to Learn Some Japanese Phrases That Come in Handy When Learning More Japanese

1. **マービン: すみません。これは日本語で何ですか。**
M bin: Sumimasen. Kore wa Nihon-go de nan desu ka?
Marvin: "Excuse me. How do you say this in Japanese?"
2. **ウエイトレス: "しょうゆ".**
U toresu: Sh yu.
Waitress: "Shoyu."
3. **マービン: すみません。もう一度お願いします。**
M bin: Sumimasen. M ichi-do onegai shimasu.
Marvin: "Excuse me, could you say that one more time, please?"
4. **ウエイトレス: "しょうゆ".**
U toresu: Sh yu.
Waitress: "Shoyu."
5. **マービン: すみません。ゆっくりお願いします。**
M bin: Sumimasen. Yukkuri onegai shimasu.
Marvin: "Excuse me, could you say it slowly, please?"
6. **ウエイトレス: "しょ・う・ゆ"**
U toresu: Sho-u-yu.
Waitress: "Sho-u-yu."

Vocabulary and Lesson Notes

すみません。

Sumimasen.
"Excuse me."

Sumimasen translates to "excuse me" in English. We often use it to try to get someone's attention when we are about to say something or ask a question.

「 word 」 は日本語で何ですか。

[word] wa Nihon-go de nan desu ka?

"How do you say (word) in Japanese?"

You can use this phrase when you don't know what something is called in Japanese. In the blank, you can put an English word or point to something and use kore wa (これは, "this") like Marvin did in the dialogue.

If someone uses a Japanese word that you are not familiar with and you would like to ask for the English translation, you can use the same structure to ask what it is called in English:

英語で何ですか。

Eigo de nan desu ka?

"What is it in English?"

お願いします。

Onegai shimasu.

"Please."

Onegai shimasu is a phrase that means "please." You can use this phrase when you are asking for something or asking someone to do something for you.

You can pair the following two phrases with onegai shimasu to ask someone to repeat something.

もう一度

M ichi-do

"One more time"

ゆっくり

Yukkuri

"Slowly"



Basic Bootcamp

Counting I

4

Grammar Points	2
----------------	---

Grammar Points

Basic Bootcamp #4: Counting I

The Focus of This Lesson is to Teach the Numbers 1 to 100 in Japanese

Dialog

Setting: Kazuki is at the gym, counting while doing exercises on a weight lifting machine.

Kazuki: 1 (ichi), 2 (ni), 3 (san), 4 (yon), 5 (go), 6, (roku) 7 (nana), 8 (hachi), 9 (ky), 10 (j)

Vocabulary and Lesson Notes

Numbers from 0-10:

0	zero / rei	〇 (or 零)
1	ichi	一
2	ni	二
3	san	三
4	shi / yon	四
5	go	五
6	roku	六
7	shichi / nana	七
8	hachi	八
9	ky	九
10	j	十

Numbers from 11-20:

11	j -ichi	十一
12	j -ni	十二
13	j -san	十三
14	j -yon	十四
15	j -go	十五
16	j -roku	十六
17	j -nana	十七

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

18	j -hachi	十八
19	j -ky	十九
20	ni-j	二十

Multiples of 10 up to 100:

10	j	十
20	ni-j	二十
30	san-j	三十
40	yon-j	四十
50	go-j	五十
60	roku-j	六十
70	nana-j	七十
80	hachi-j	八十
90	ky -j	九十
100	hyaku	百

[Some more numbers discussed in this lesson:](#)

25

ni-j -go

二十五

43

yon-j -san

四十三

77

nana-j -nana

七十七

92

ky -j -ni

九十二

48

yon-j -hachi

四十八

55



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

go-j -go
五十五

100
hyaku
百

Culture Tip

The Japanese are very superstitious when it comes to numbers. Many people believe that certain numbers are auspicious, while other numbers are unlucky ones you should avoid. This originates from the fact that many Japanese words are homophones. Certain numbers have pronunciations that are similar to other words that have either good or bad connotations.

For example, the Japanese believe the number four is very unlucky and they avoid it whenever possible. The reason is that the pronunciation of the number four (四, shi) in Japanese is very similar in sound to the word for "death" (死, shi). We consider the number nine (九, ky) to be unlucky for the same reason-one of the pronunciations is ku, which is the same as the word for "suffering" [(苦, ku)]. Because of these beliefs, many hospitals and apartment buildings do not have room numbers with four or nine in them.

On the other hand, the Japanese believe that the numbers seven (七, shichi) and eight (八, hachi) are lucky numbers. The concept of "lucky seven" is largely a Western one, but the Seven Deities of Good Fortune (七福神, shichifukujin) are one instance of the number seven signifying luck in Japanese folk religion. The Japanese consider the number eight (八, hachi) to be lucky because of the way the strokes in the Chinese character gradually broaden out, which is connected to the idea of growing prosperous.



Basic Bootcamp

Counting II

5

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

Basic Bootcamp #5: Counting II

The Focus of This Lesson is to Teach Numbers from 100 to 100,000 in Japanese

Let's take a look at the numbers from 100 to 100,000 in Japanese.

Dialog

Setting: Hiro and Kazuki are at an auction, where an antique comic book is being auctioned off.

Auctioneer: And here we have an antique comic book-this is a true collector's item that's one of a kind! We'll start the bidding at 100 yen.

Hiro: Hyaku! (100!)
Kazuki: Ni-hyaku! (200!)
Hiro: Go-hyaku! (500!)
Kazuki: Sen! (1,000!)
Hiro: Sen san-byaku! (1,300!)
Kazuki: Sen ro-ppyaku! (1,600!)
Hiro: Ni-sen! (2,000!)
Kazuki: San-zen! (3,000!)
Hiro: Ha-ssen! (8,000!!!)
Kazuki:

Auctioneer: Sold! To this person right here for 8,000 yen!

Yatta! (Yay!)

Vocabulary and Lesson Notes

百

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

hyaku
100

千
sen
1,000

万
ichi-man
10,000

To create multiples of hundreds and thousands, attach the number before the word hyaku ("hundred") and sen ("thousand").

100	hyaku	百	1,000	sen	千
200	ni-hyaku	二百	2,000	ni-sen	二千
300	san-byaku*	三百	3,000	san-zen*	三千
400	yon-hyaku	四百	4,000	yon-sen	四千
500	go-hyaku	五百	5,000	go-sen	五千
600	ro-ppyaku*	六百	6,000	roku-sen	六千
700	nana-hyaku	七百	7,000	nana-sen	七千
800	ha-ppyaku*	八百	8,000	ha-ssen	八千
900	ky -haku	九百	9,000	ky -sen	九千

*The words marked with an asterisk are exceptions. Please note the sound changes that take place in these words.

10,000	ichi-man	一万
20,000	ni-man	二万
30,000	san-man	三万
40,000	yon-man	四万
50,000	go-man	五万
60,000	roku-man	六万
70,000	nana-man	七万
80,000	hachi-man	八万
90,000	ky -man	九万
10,000	j -man	十万
1,000,000	hyaku-man	百万

More Complex Numbers

百十一

hyaku j -ichi

111

四百七十

yon-hyaku nana-j

470

六百二十一

roppyaku ni-j -ichi

621

三千五百九十

san-zen go-hyaku ky -j

3,590

七千八百八十

nana-sen ha-ppyaku hachi-j

7,880

LESSON NOTES

All About #1

Introduction to Japanese and Top 5 Reasons to Study

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

1

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is The Top Five Reasons to Learn Japanese

Background of the Japanese Language

Japanese is thought to be an isolated language or an Altaic language. It ranks in the list of the top ten languages based on number of native speakers, with around 130 million people speaking Japanese as their native language.

The Japanese language is rich with regional dialects, with some being so radically different from *hyōjun-go* (標準語), the "standard dialect," that even some native speakers have trouble understanding them. The most well known dialect is *Kansai-ben* (関西弁) the "Kansai dialect," which is spoken throughout the Kansai region of Japan. The Kansai region refers to an area in western Japan that includes the major cities of Osaka and Kyoto.

The Japanese written language consists of three alphabets: *hiragana*, *katakana*, and *kanji*. *Hiragana* and *katakana* are phonetic alphabets, with the latter being used primarily for writing foreign words. *Kanji* is a system of characters of Chinese origin used to represent various ideas.

As mentioned above, the Japanese language's writing system has borrowed heavily from that of the Chinese language. Although the number of borrowed Chinese characters is in the thousands, many of them have fallen out of use. The Japanese Ministry of Education has created a list of 1,945 *jōyō kanji* (常用漢字) "common use kanji" made up of characters commonly used in everyday life. Japanese children will have studied all of these *kanji* by the time they graduate from junior high school.

About Japan

Japan is known as *Nihon* or *Nippon* (日本) to the Japanese, with the two characters meaning "sun" and "origin." This is why Japan is sometimes known as the "Land of the Rising Sun."

Where Is Japanese Spoken?

Japanese is mainly spoken on the island of Japan, but there are large communities of Japanese speakers all over the world, including China, Korea, Australia, the United States, Canada, and many other regions.

Why Is It Important?

So why should you learn Japanese? Here are some of the top reasons...

5. To communicate with Japanese people! Over 130 million people throughout the world speak Japanese, placing it in the top ten languages spoken in the world. Just imagine all

of the conversations you could have!

- 4.** Japanese pronunciation is easy! Japanese is pronounced just the way it looks, so you can start speaking it right away.
- 3.** You will learn more than just a language. Learning Japanese will give you a great insight into the world of Japanese culture that you just can't get any other way. By learning how the language works, you'll learn more about how the culture works.
- 2.** Japanese is fun! Japan has a lot to offer in the way of pop culture-fun and interesting movies, music, TV shows, comics, games-you name it! Learning Japanese will give you even greater access to the rich world of Japanese pop culture.
- 1.** Learning Japanese makes you smarter! Recent scientific studies show that learning a second language can actually hold off Alzheimer's disease. Learning a second language also increases your memory and makes you stay sharper, helps your attention span, and sharpens your critical thinking skills. What excuse is there NOT to study Japanese now?

LESSON NOTES

All About #2

Learn the Japanese Writing System

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

2

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Japanese Writing System

The Japanese writing system uses two syllabic scripts, known separately as *hiragana* (ひらがな) and *katakana* (カタカナ) and collectively as *kana* (かな), as well as thousands of Chinese characters known as *kanji* (漢字). Each script serves a different function. We use *hiragana* for grammatical elements and for words that do not use *kanji* (or for words where the author doesn't know the *kanji*). We most frequently use *katakana* to write borrowed words of foreign origin and onomatopoeic sound effects. Finally, we use *kanji* for words of both Japanese and Chinese origin as well as many Japanese names.

The earliest written form of Japanese was based on *kanji*. In this system, known as *man'yōgana*, these *kanji* were used for their pronunciation rather than their meaning. Because this system was quite complicated, *kana* were invented as a way to simplify it. As a result, each *hiragana* and *katakana* character comes from a simplified version of a *man'yōgana kanji*. If you look at some of these *man'yōgana kanji* and their simplified *kana* equivalents side-by-side, it is easy to see how they came to be.

There are forty-six characters in the *hiragana* and *katakana* scripts, for a total of ninety-two characters in all. These characters represent sounds, specifically syllables. A syllable is generally made up of a consonant plus a vowel, though some are only a vowel. In Japanese, there are five vowels (a, i, u, e, and o) and fourteen basic consonants (k, s, t, n, h, m, y, r, w, g, z, d, b, and p).

We use the *hiragana* syllabary for two types of words that do not use *kanji*: *okurigana* (送り仮名), which are inflected verb and adjective endings; and for grammatical elements called "particles." *Hiragana* is also used to write *furigana* (ふりがな), small symbols placed above or to the side of a *kanji* character that indicate how it is read. While *furigana* is most frequently used to aid children and foreigners learning Japanese, it is also used when the reading for a *kanji* is particularly difficult or uncommon. *Hiragana* are characterized by their curvy, flowing lines.

We use the *katakana* syllabary for *gairaigo* (外来語), words of foreign origin, onomatopoeic words that indicate sounds, scientific names, and also for emphasis, much like how italics are used in English. *Katakana* are characterized by their angular, boxy lines.

Kanji are Chinese characters that have been adapted into Japanese over many years. The characters were originally pictographs of people, animals, and other objects.

Kanji	Reading	"Meaning"
口	<i>kuchi</i>	"mouth"
山	<i>yama</i>	"mountain"

As you can see in the table above, the character 口, pronounced *kuchi*, means "mouth"

and is a box shape that resembles an open mouth. Another example is the character 山, pronounced *yama*, which means "mountain" and indeed looks like the skeleton of a mountain. However, over the centuries, *kanji* have become increasingly stylized and most no longer resemble the things they represent. *Kanji* are made up of smaller parts known as radicals. Many characters have been combined with others to create new ones. When written on the page, each character is given exactly the same amount of space, no matter how complex it is. In written Japanese, there are no spaces between characters.

The number of *kanji* in existence number into the tens of thousands, but the good news is that a large number of these are rarely used variants, accumulated throughout history. The Japanese government has created a list of characters recommended for daily use known as *jōyō kanji* (常用漢字), which currently contains 1,945 characters (as of 2009). As this list occasionally undergoes revisions, this number may increase in the future. Studies have shown that full literacy in the Japanese language requires knowledge of around two thousand characters.

Most *kanji* have at least two different kinds of readings: *kun yomi* (訓読み), which is the Japanese reading, and *on yomi* (音読み), which is the original Chinese reading. To give an example, we can read the *kanji* 水 ("water") as either *mizu* (*kun yomi*) or *sui* (*on yomi*). We usually use the *kun yomi* when the *kanji* stands alone and the *on yomi* when the *kanji* is part of a compound. However, there are exceptions to this rule you simply must remember.

Rōmaji (ローマ字) is Japanese transliterated into the Roman alphabet. With *rōmaji*, one can read Japanese without any prior knowledge of the Japanese writing system. There are several systems of *rōmaji*, with the Hepburn system being the most widely used.

LESSON NOTES

All About #3

Learn Japanese Grammar

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

3

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Basic Japanese Grammar

Welcome to our explanation of Basic Japanese Grammar! Now, we know the mere mention of grammar is enough to make your palms sweat and perhaps bring back some not-so-good memories of your old high school language classes. But don't worry—we're here to give you a basic overview of Japanese grammar using language that's easy to understand—no drawn-out, long-winded explanations here! Learn Japanese grammar quickly while having fun at the same time!

Before we take a look at Japanese grammar, let's quickly review the basics of English grammar. By understanding more about how English grammar works, you'll be able to see how it differs from Japanese grammar.

First, let's take a look at sentence order.

English is what we call an SVO language, which means the sentences come in the order of subject-verb-object. Let's illustrate this with an example.

English Sentence Order

Subject	Verb	Object
I	eat	fruit

The subject, or the thing taking the action, is "I." The verb, or action, is "eat." The object, or the thing receiving the action, is "fruit." This is an example of a sentence in an SVO language.

Japanese is a bit different from English in this respect. Japanese is what's called an SOV language. This means the subject comes first, followed by the object, and then the verb. Remember that: the verb comes last. So our previous example, "I eat fruit" in English, becomes "I fruit eat" when put in Japanese SOV order.

Japanese Sentence Order

Subject	Object	Verb
I	fruit	eat

This is one of the biggest differences between English and Japanese grammar and one of the most important aspects to keep in mind!

Characteristics of the Japanese Language

Now let's compare some characteristics of the Japanese language with the English language. First, we'll talk about features that are much simpler than their English counterparts.

Tense

Let's start with tense. Tense is a method we use in English to refer to time—past, present, and future. If you are a native English speaker, you might not even be aware of how many

tenses there are in English. Let's think about the future tense for a moment. The present-tense sentence "I jog", when changed to the future tense, becomes "I will jog" or even "I'm going to jog". (And there's even a slight difference between them!)

Japanese, on the other hand, only has two tenses: past and non-past. It's called non-past because Japanese uses the same tense for the present and future. How does this work? Let's take a look! Here's an example of our sentence in the present tense.

(スーパーに行きます。)

Sūpā ni ikimasu.

"I go to the supermarket."

So how do we change this to the future tense? Simple! We just add a word that indicates the action will occur sometime in the future:

[(明日/来週) スーパーに行きます。]

raishū Sūpā ni ikimasu.

"I will go to the supermarket tomorrow/next week."

There you have it! By adding a word like "tomorrow" or "next week" that indicates some point in the future, we've turned our present tense into future tense without even changing the verb.

Conjugation

English is full of irregular verbs. In many cases, we can turn present tense verbs into past tense by adding the suffix -ed to the end, but think of how many exceptions there are to this rule: "fly" becomes "flew," "run" becomes "ran," "buy" becomes "bought"...the list goes on! If you've ever studied a Romance language, then you know how common exceptions are when it comes to conjugating verbs. In contrast, Japanese only has two-count them-two verbs that conjugate irregularly. The rest follow the same patterns, so they're easy to get the hang of! Japanese verbs are divided up into three different groups according to how they conjugate, which we will refer to as Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 later on.

English and many other languages also conjugate verbs according to who is taking the action: for example, "I go" vs. "he goes." When you get into Romance languages, this system gets even more complex. However, in Japanese, it doesn't matter who is doing the action-the verb will not change! Let's look at a few examples so we can really appreciate this advantage of Japanese. First, note that the verb "to go" is *ikimasu*. The other words in red are "I", "him", and "you", respectively.

1. 私は学校に行きます。
Watashi wa gakkō ni ikimasu.
"I go to school."
2. 彼は学校に行きます。
Kare wa gakkō ni ikimasu.
"He goes to school."
3. あなた達は学校に行きます。
Anata-tachi wa gakkō ni ikimasu.
"You (pl.) go to school."

Take a look at *ikimasu!* It doesn't change! Who is doing the action has no effect on the following verb. Great, isn't it?

Singulars and Plurals

Remember learning all of the complicated rules for forming plurals in English when you were in grade school? We first learn that you add the suffix *-s* to a word to make it plural, but then came one exception after another, such as words like knives, candies, and mice. Well now, think about this: Japanese words almost never change to reflect plurals. *Nezumi*, the word for "mouse," could refer to one mouse or ten mice! What a big change from having two different words to differentiate between singular and plural.

Forming Questions

Think for a moment about how you form questions in English. You have to change the order of the sentence. Here's an example:

"**He is** a student" becomes "**Is he** a student?"

In Japanese, it's extremely easy to create questions. By simply putting *ka* at the end of a sentence, you can turn it into a question! Let's take a look at the Japanese equivalent of the sentence above:

彼は学生です。 → 彼は学生ですか？

(*Kare wa gakusei desu.*) → (*Kare wa gakusei desu ka?*)

"He is a student." → "Is he a student?"

Let's look at one more:

あなたは東京に住んでいます。 → あなたは東京に住んでいますか。

(*Anata wa Tōkyō ni sunde imasu.*) → (*Anata wa Tōkyō ni sunde imasu ka?*)

"You live in Tokyo." → "Do you live in Tokyo?"

Okay, now let's take a look at some characteristics unique to the Japanese language that may not have any equivalent in English.

Formal and Informal Speech

In English, we can use certain words and phrases to make our speech sound more polite to others. Japanese uses entirely different grammar structures when it comes to polite speech. There are three politeness levels in spoken Japanese: informal, formal, and honorific.

Gender

By gender, we do not mean feminine and masculine words that show up in many of the romance languages. By gender, we mean that female speakers will use different words and phrases than men, and that there are some exclusively masculine words. In Japanese, it is very possible to look at written dialogue and guess whether the speaker is male or female without any verbal cues.

Counters

Japanese has a long list of counters, or words that we use to count specific items. The corresponding counter depends on the appearance or makeup of the item. For example, there are different counters for sheets of paper and bottles because they differ in shape. While English does contain some counters (think "loaf of bread" or "bottle of wine"), the range of counters in Japanese is much more extensive.

Omission

In English, we almost always need to state the subject in our sentences: "Yesterday **I** went

shopping at the mall, and then I went to Starbucks where I had a latte." Note that we *need* to state "I" for every action.

In Japanese, the writer often omits the subject from the sentence when it's understood who is doing the action. In fact, stating the subject every time will actually make your Japanese sound unnatural. The key is to only state the subject when it's absolutely necessary. In this way, Japanese lets you get straight to the important part of your sentence!

That wasn't so bad, was it? We hope this overview has given you a good idea of some of the most unique characteristics of Japanese. Keeping these in mind will give you an idea of what to look out for and will prepare you as you dive further into the world of Japanese grammar!

LESSON NOTES

All About #4

Learn Japanese Pronunciation

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

4

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Basic Japanese Pronunciation

It's often said that Japanese pronunciation is one of the easiest aspects of the language. And guess what-it's true! But it still takes some practice, and we're here to help you with it. We'll introduce you to the ins and outs of Japanese pronunciation and show you how it differs from English pronunciation.

Sounds and Syllables

Let's first take a look at how Japanese sounds work. Compared with other languages, Japanese has a relatively small set of sounds, with only fourteen consonants (k, s, t, n, h, m, y, r, w, g, z, d, b, and p) and five vowels (a, e, i, o, and u). In Japanese, there are no such words as the English word "strength," which has clusters of three or more consonants. Japanese is made up of syllables, which are made up of a consonant and a vowel. The only exceptions are the vowels and the *n* sound, which stand alone.

Stress

Let's think about stress in English for a moment. Try saying the words "important" and "interesting" aloud. When you say these words aloud, you're putting emphasis, or stress, on a certain syllable. In "important," the stress is on the "port" syllable. In "interesting," the stress is on the "int" syllable. If you haven't studied phonetics before, it's probably something that just comes naturally that you've never noticed! Because correct English pronunciation emphasizes certain syllables, English is known as a stress language.

Japanese, on the other hand, doesn't have stress! It's a stress-free language! (Until you start learning kanji, perhaps...) In Japanese, each syllable is held the same length of time and given equal stress. Stressing only certain syllables will sound unnatural; so keep this in mind when pronouncing Japanese.

Let's take a look at a word in Japanese and compare how it is pronounced in both Japanese and English. Let's take the word *teriyaki*, the name of a cooking technique where meat is marinated.

English pronunciation: [ter-uh-**YAH**-kee] Note how the third syllable is stressed.

Japanese pronunciation: [teh-ree-yah-kee] In Japanese, each syllable receives the same amount of stress.

This might sound like a lot to consider, but remember that learning good pronunciation is one of the easier aspects of learning the Japanese language!

LESSON NOTES

All About #5

Top 5 Must Know Japanese Phrases

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

5

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Must-Know Japanese Phrases

Here we'll introduce five phrases in Japanese that will take you a long way and help you out in a variety of situations!

Sumimasen (すみません) "Excuse me" / "I'm sorry" / "Thanks"

Sumimasen is a versatile phrase with a few different meanings depending on the situation, the closest of which is "excuse me." Whether you are trying to get someone's attention to ask them a question, making your way through a crowded area, or apologizing for running into someone or stepping on their foot, *sumimasen* is the phrase you want to use. If someone gets something for you or kindly does something for you, you can use *sumimasen* to thank them as well as apologize for the trouble they have gone through to help you. The correct spelling and pronunciation of this phrase is *sumimasen*, but quite a few people pronounce it as *suimasen*, omitting the first "m" sound.

Dōmo (どうも) "Thanks" / "Hi"

Dōmo is a simple and easy way to say "thank you" as well as greet someone. This phrase is more casual than using *kon'nichi wa* ("hello") or *arigatō* ("thank you"), and you can use it when these two phrases might be a little too formal for what the situation calls for. Some people use this to thank shop clerks because they think that using the formal *arigatō gozaimasu* ("thank you very much") might be a little too polite and out of place.

Dōzo (どうぞ) "Please go ahead" / "Please"

If you're offering something to someone or would like someone to go ahead of you or do something before you, *dōzo* is the phrase you are looking for. Offering your seat to someone on the train? *Dōzo*. Holding the door for someone and would like them to go right ahead? *Dōzo*. At a restaurant and someone else's food came before yours and you would like them to start eating? *Dōzo*. Try your hand at making some delicious *o-nigiri* ("rice balls") and would like to offer them to someone? *Dōzo!*

O-negai shimasu (お願いします) "Please"

You can use this handy phrase when you would like to ask for a favor or make a request of some kind. By using this phrase, you can show your appreciation in advance for the favor or request you have asked. In a business situation, it means something like "please take care of this for me." In addition to requests or favors, you can also use it to ask for tangible objects.

Hai (はい) "Right" / "Yes" / "Here you go"

And now for the most compact phrase of the top five: the phrase *hai*. The most common translation for this word is "yes" or "right," but depending on the situation, it can also mean "here you go" if someone says it as they hand something to you. Something important to note, though, is that Japanese people often use this phrase as they are listening to show they are following what the speaker is saying - it doesn't necessarily mean they agree with or are affirming anything the speaker is saying. Just something to keep in mind to hopefully avoid any confusion!

You can also use this word when you aren't able to catch what someone is saying and you

would like them to repeat what they have said. When said with rising intonation, like a question (*hai?*), it is the equivalent of saying, "Excuse me?" or "I'm sorry?"

LESSON NOTES

All About #6

Think You Can Answer These 5 Questions About Japan?

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

6

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Asking: How Much do you Really Know About Japan?

Test your knowledge of Japan with this fun quiz!

This lesson will test your basic knowledge of Japan by quizzing you on five areas of knowledge: geography, pop culture, travel, economics, and myth-busting.

Questions

1) Geography Question: How many prefectures does Japan have?

- A) 50
- B) 38
- C) 47

2) Pop Culture Question: Below are the names of three popular characters that originated in Japan. Can you put them in order of their creation, from oldest to newest?

Godzilla
Pikachu
Hello Kitty

3) Travel Question: The following are popular tourist sites in Japan. Which one is not located in Tokyo?

- A) Tsukiji fish market
- B) Mt. Fuji
- C) The Imperial Palace

4) Economic Question: Where does Japan's economy fall in the ranking of world economies?

5) Debunking a Myth About Japan Question: True/False: Japan's main staple diet is sushi.

Answers

1) Geography Question: How many prefectures does Japan have?

The answer is C) 47. Japan has forty-seven prefectures, the largest of which is the northernmost prefecture, Hokkaido, and the most populous of which is the country's capital, Tokyo.

2) Pop Culture Question: Below are the names of three popular characters that originated in Japan. Can you put them in order of their creation, from oldest to newest?

Answer: The correct order is Godzilla (1954), Hello Kitty (1974), and Pikachu (1995). All three characters have accumulated a large fan following not only in Japan but also around the world.

3) Travel Question: The following are popular tourist sites in Japan. Which one is not located in Tokyo?

The answer is B) Mt. Fuji. While Mt. Fuji is visible from Tokyo on a clear day, it is actually located 100 km/60 miles away, on the border of Shizuoka and Yamanashi prefectures.

4) Economic Question: Where does Japan's economy fall in the rankings of world economies?

The answer is #2. Japan's economy is the second largest in the world after that of the United States.

5) Debunking a Myth About Japan Question: True/False: Japan's main staple diet is sushi.

The answer is false! Many people think of sushi when they think of Japanese food, but the truth is that this food is more of a delicacy than anything else. You won't find many people who eat sushi every day or even on a regular basis. The main staple food in Japan is rice, which the Japanese eat with almost every meal.

LESSON NOTES

All About #7

Top 5 Japanese Dishes You Have to Try and Top 5 Dishes for the Really Brave!

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

7

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Japanese Food

What comes to your mind when you think of Japanese food? Sushi, perhaps? Rolls containing various kinds of seafood and vegetables stuffed inside? Well, while you might find lots of sushi and rolls in Japan, they are merely the tip of the iceberg when it comes to Japanese cuisine - there is a whole lot more for you to discover!

Table Etiquette

Before we go on to the food, let's first talk about Japanese table etiquette. Before eating, it is customary to say *itadakimasu*, which means, "I will humbly receive," as a way to show gratitude for the meal.

When using chopsticks, it is important to remember a few things to avoid being rude. Don't stab your chopsticks into your rice and leave them there, and never pass food with your chopsticks directly to someone else's chopsticks, as both of these actions are related to funeral traditions.

When eating and drinking in a big group, wait for others to pour your drink for you, and then return the favor when you see someone's glass getting low.

In some Asian countries, such as Korea, it is unacceptable to pick up your rice bowl when eating, but in Japan, this is very common.

Regional Dishes

One of the most interesting aspects of Japanese cuisine is its vast array of regional delicacies. Each area of Japan boasts its own selection of specialty dishes that have become closely associated with that area. It is not uncommon for Japanese people from all over Japan to travel hundreds or even thousands of miles to try the different specialties in the place that they originally come from.

One of the most famous examples of regional cuisine is ***okonomiyaki***, which is a flat, pancake-shaped food. Cooked on a hot plate, *okonomiyaki* usually contains chopped cabbage, meat, and seafood. However, because the name contains the word *okonomi*, meaning "to one's liking," it is up to you to decide what goes into your *okonomiyaki*. Cheese, *mochi*, and even Korean kimchee ("pickled vegetables") are among some of the most popular additions to *okonomiyaki*. There are two regional variations of *okonomiyaki*: Osaka style and Hiroshima style. In Osaka style, which is considered the dominant style that you'll find all over Japan, the chef mixes all the ingredients together before transferring them to the hot plate. There, the chef cooks it and then tops it with dried seaweed, dried *bonito*, or fish flakes, and a thick *okonomiyaki* sauce. On the other hand, in Hiroshima style, the chef layers the ingredients one-by-one instead of mixing them together. It is very common to add noodles, and the amount of cabbage is anywhere from three to four times the amount usually used in Osaka-style *okonomiyaki*.

Other popular regional dishes include ***gōya chanpuru***, a stir-fried dish containing *gōya*, a very bitter gourd, from Okinawa; ***wanko soba***, buckwheat noodles from Iwate served in bite-served portions that keep coming until you say stop; ***basashi***, raw horse meat, from Kumamoto; ***gyūtan***, cow tongue, from Miyagi, and much, much more. If you have a chance to visit Japan, definitely try some of the local specialties!

Popular Dishes

Some of the most popular dishes in Japan are usually quite different from what people might imagine. If you were to look at the average Japanese person's lunch, what would you find? The most common Japanese lunch is the **bentō**. *Bentō* refers to a meal served in a box that is either prepared at home or bought at restaurants and convenience stores. Anything goes when it comes to the contents of a *bentō*, although white rice, fish, and vegetables are common elements found in many *bentō*. Visually, *bentō* range from very simple to elaborately arranged. There is even a kind of *bentō* called *kyaraben*, short for character *bentō*, where the food is arranged and decorated to look like people, animals, popular characters, and so on.

Other everyday Japanese foods include **o-nigiri**, rice balls wrapped in seaweed with various fillings; **curry**, usually containing potatoes, carrots, onions, and served together with white rice; **karaage**, Japanese-style fried meat, usually chicken; **rāmen**, a Japanese noodle dish that originated in China; and more.

Seasonal Dishes

The Japanese really love their seasons, and they especially love eating the different dishes associated with each season. When the cold weather sets in in the winter, people line up to eat **nabe** and **oden**, which are both hot stew-like dishes. *Nabe* is a hot pot that consists of a stew with assorted meats and vegetables. The host usually places the pot in the center of the table so many people can share it. *Oden*, on the other hand, is an assortment of vegetables and meat stewed in a light, soy-flavored broth. Common ingredients found in *oden* are *daikon* radish, boiled eggs, meat skewers, and fish cakes. You can purchase even *oden* at convenience stores, where you can pick and choose what goes into your *oden*.

In spring, along with the *sakura* ("cherry blossoms"), comes *sakura no shiozuke* ("salted cherry blossoms") and leaves that chefs use in various ways in Japanese cuisine, the most commonplace being **sakura-mochi**. *Sakura-mochi* is *mochi*, a sticky rice cake, wrapped in a salted *sakura* leaf and topped with a salted cherry blossom. The sweltering heat in the summer accounts for the popularity of cold dishes such as *hiyashi sōmen*, ("chilled wheat noodles"), and **kakigōri**, ("shaved ice"). In fall, *kuri*, known as chestnuts, come into season and chefs use them in many dishes, such as *kuri go-han*, which is cooked rice with sweet chestnuts.

Top Five Foods to Try in Japan

Sushi

Sushi is probably the most famous Japanese food. Make your way to Tsukiji Fish Market, one of the largest fish markets in the world, for some of the freshest *sushi* around. For a unique *sushi* experience, try *kaiten zushi*, which also known as conveyor belt *sushi*. In *kaiten zushi* restaurants, the chefs place plates of *sushi* on a rotating conveyor belt that makes its way through the restaurant, moving past every table and seat. Customers are free to pick and choose the *sushi* they want off the conveyor belt, although they can also place special orders.

Soba and udon

Soba, buckwheat noodles, and *udon*, thick noodles made from wheat, are two of the

most popular types of Japanese noodles. You can serve both hot or cold, and there are many different varieties in different regions of Japan.

Tōfu

Let's face it; tofu doesn't have the best reputation in the West. Even if you aren't crazy about tofu or just can't shake its bland, flavorless image, you're sure to find a *tōfu* recipe that will make you reconsider this Japanese delicacy. In Japan, there are innumerable ways to prepare tofu that give it tons of flavor. Some of the most popular include *agedashi-dōfu* ("deep-fried tofu"), *mabō dōfu* ("spicy tōfu," originally from China), and the aforementioned *gōya champuru*, a dish from Okinawa made with *gōya* and *tōfu*.

Shabushabu

Shabushabu is a dish that uses thin slices of meat dipped in boiling water or broth, which you then dip into a flavored sauce and eat. This dish is usually served with tōfu and vegetables.

Rāmen

Rāmen is a Japanese noodle dish that has its roots in China. It consists of a meaty broth, noodles, shredded meat, and vegetables. *Rāmen* shops are located all over Japan, with many regional variations available. Some of the most popular *rāmen* flavors are *miso* (a paste made from fermented soybeans), *shōyu* ("soy sauce"), *shio* ("salt"), and *tonkotsu* ("pork bone").

Top Five Foods for the Brave

Nattō

Nattō is a traditional food made from fermented soybeans, infamous for its bad smell and sticky consistency. So infamous, in fact, that one question Japanese people are sure to ask you is whether or not you have tried *nattō*. *Nattō* is usually eaten as a topping on rice.

Nama tamago

Nama tamago, or raw egg, shows up in a variety of Japanese dishes, including the popular favorites *sukiyaki*, where you dip meat into a bowl of raw egg before you eat it, and *tamago kake go-han*, cooked rice mixed with raw egg and a little bit of soy sauce.

Shiokara

Shiokara is Japanese fermented seafood that has a very strong flavor and is quite salty. It is definitely an acquired taste, even for many native Japanese people.

Reba-sashi

Reba-sashi is short for *rebā sashimi*, which is "raw liver." You can usually find this at *yakiniku* (Korean barbecue) restaurants in Japan.

Kusaya

Kusaya is a Japanese style salted-dried fish. The name comes from the word *kusai*, which literally means, "smells bad." You make *kusaya* by soaking fish into a "*kusaya* gravy" (that is used over and over again) and then leave it to dry in the sun. The smell of *kusaya* is very strong, but the taste is relatively mellow. While it is fairly well-known because of its bad smell, even among Japanese people, few have actually tried it.

LESSON NOTES

All About #8

Top 5 Things You Need to Know About Japanese Society

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

8

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Japanese Society

Japanese society is a very broad topic and is hard to summarize in a single lesson. That's why we're narrowing it down to its top five most important aspects!

Major Cities of Japan

Tokyo is the capital of Japan and the largest city in the country. Tokyo is also one of Japan's forty-seven prefectures, but it is referred to as a *to* ("a metropolis") instead of a *ken* ("a prefecture"). The metropolis of Tokyo is made up of twenty-three *ku* ("city wards"), twenty-six cities, five towns, and eight villages, as well as numerous small Pacific islands.

The name Tokyo means "the Eastern Capital," and it became the capital of Japan during the nineteenth century when its name changed from Edo to Tokyo. As of 2007, the population of the city of Tokyo is estimated to be about 12.8 million people. The Greater Tokyo area, which is made up of Tokyo and surrounding prefectures Chiba, Kanagawa, and Saitama, has an estimated population of 35.6 million people. Because of the large number of people living in Tokyo, downtown Tokyo is often very crowded and busy, especially in and around major commuting areas like train stations.

Shinjuku, one of the twenty-three special wards of Tokyo, is a major commercial and administrative center, and most consider it the heart of downtown Tokyo. It is home to the busiest train station in the world, Shinjuku Station, and the Tokyo Metropolitan Government Building, the administration center for the government of Tokyo.

There is no shortage of things to do and see in Tokyo. From the numerous museums and famous zoo in Ueno to the fancy high-end stores and restaurants in Ginza to the throng of discount electronics stores in Akihabara, each neighborhood offers something different and unique. Whether you're visiting Tokyo as a tourist or making a life there, you're sure never to get bored.

Kyoto, one of the oldest cities in Japan, was the capital of Japan until 1868, when Tokyo became the capital. Now it is a major city in the Kansai area, known for its traditional atmosphere because of its numerous temples and shrines. Thousands of tourists come from all over the world to visit these temples and shrines, especially in spring to see the cherry blossoms and in autumn to see the leaves change color.

Osaka is a large city that is located in the Kansai area close to Kyoto. It is the capital of Osaka prefecture as well as the economic and cultural center of the Kansai region. People from Osaka are characterized as friendly with a good sense of humor. Many famous Japanese comedians hail from Osaka. Older women in Osaka especially are known for being bright and full of energy, as well as good at bargaining. Osaka also boasts regional specialties, among them *okonomiyaki*, a pancake-like dish containing a variety of ingredients cooked on a hot plate, and *takoyaki*, fried dumplings with small pieces of octopus inside.

Family Life

Families in Japan are generally traditional, and the family is a focal point of life.

Immediate families are a bit smaller compared to those of other countries; it is not uncommon for Japanese parents to have only one or two children. It was very common for three generations (children, parents, and grandparents) to live together in the same household; however, lately you can see a trend toward nuclear families in larger cities. It is also very common for adult children to continue to live with their parents well into their twenties or thirties until they get married. Japanese gender roles are still quite traditional, with women expected to stay home and take care of their children and men expected to support the family financially. However, this is also slowly changing, with the number of working mothers and stay-at-home dads slowly increasing.

A few problems have recently plagued Japanese family life and society. One of them is the decreasing birthrate, which hit a record low in 2005 when the number of deaths outnumbered the number of births. If this trend continues, Japan's population will start shrinking. Many factors are contributing to this problem, with the delay in marriage being one of the major ones. More and more men and women are waiting until they are older to get married, with the number of single people in their thirties and forties increasing steadily every year. Another problem is the lack of support and benefits for parents with children, which makes the decision to have children an undesirable one in the eyes of young people.

Work Culture and Economy

Japan's economy is ranked second in the world after that of the United States, and some of its main industries include motor vehicles, electronics, industrial and transportation equipment, and chemicals. Some major, well-known Japanese companies include Sony, Mitsubishi, Toyota, and Honda.

In Japan, the dominant work culture is quite rigid. Employees in their first years at a company often have to work long hours for little pay. Working overtime, which is often unpaid, is an everyday occurrence at Japanese companies. The hierarchy in Japanese companies is very strict as well, with relationships following a rigid system based on seniority. Companies require subordinates to address their superiors formally and treat them with respect. It is very common for employees to all go out drinking together after a long day at work; the Japanese see this as a way to strengthen relationships and build work camaraderie. There are some disadvantages to the seniority system, however. When managers promote employees, they focus more on age and the amount of the time the person has worked at the company rather than individual accomplishments and achievements.

Another important part of the Japanese work economy is the custom of lifelong employment. This system, however, is becoming less common due to a decrease in the number of full-time employees and an increase in the number of part-time and contractual employees. There is even a term, *freeteer*, the Japanese have coined to refer to young people who work one or more part-time jobs as an alternative to obtaining full-time employment. *Freeteers* cite a flexible schedule and the ability to take more time off with relative ease as advantages to working part-time jobs.

Politics

Japan is a parliamentary monarchy governed by a Prime Minister and his cabinet. The

bicameral parliament is called the Diet and is made up of the upper House of Councillors and the lower House of Representatives. The lower House holds most of the power. The Japanese people elect members of the Japanese Diet, who in turn elect the Prime Minister of Japan. Japan has a figurehead Emperor whose role is mostly symbolic and traditional; he possesses no political power.

Unlike the United States or the United Kingdom, Japanese political parties tend to change constantly with one major exception—the Liberal Democratic Party, which has held power for more than fifty years—since the end of World War II. The second and third most popular parties at the moment are the *Kōmeitō*, the Clean Government Party (CGP), and the newly founded *Minshutō*, the Democratic Party of Japan (DPJ).

Generational Trends

Generally speaking, the older and younger generations tend to do things differently and hold different ideas about things. The older generation tends to have a strong sense of loyalty to their companies and place work high on their priority lists, even above family. The younger generation, however, is not averse to changing jobs if there is something they are dissatisfied with, and as mentioned before, many see no problem with not pursuing full-time employment. Members of the younger generation also seem to keep more of their own interests in mind as they wait longer and longer to get married and have children. Many members of the older generation view these trends of young people today as signs that they are selfish and fickle. As attitudes continue to change, it will be interesting to see in what ways Japanese culture and society change along with them.

LESSON NOTES

All About #9

Top 5 Important Dates in Japan

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

9

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Five Most Important Holidays in Japan

Japan has many different holidays that carry a lot of meaning and have years of tradition behind them. Here we'll introduce the top five most important holidays in Japan, going in reverse order starting with number five.

The fifth most important holiday in Japan is *Seijin no Hi*, or "**Coming-of-Age Day**." On this day, people who turn twenty during the current school year, which runs between April until the following March, celebrate their coming of age. In Japan, when people turn twenty, society legally recognizes them as an adult, and they are able to drink alcohol and vote. The festival was created as a Japanese national holiday in 1947 when it was set to January 15th. However, this holiday was moved to the second Monday in January in 1999 as a result of the "Happy Monday System," the Japanese government's decision to move more holidays to Monday to create a three-day weekend for those who normally have a five-day workweek.

On this day, local city halls and community centers hold small ceremonies in the morning. Government officials give speeches and hand out small gifts to the people in attendance who are turning twenty. It is customary for girls to wear *furisode kimono*, which are kimono that have sleeves much longer than those of regular *kimono*, and put their hair up in fancy hairstyles. Because the *furisode kimono* are very elaborate and hard to put on, many girls go to a beauty salon to get professional help with their *kimono* and hair. On this day, most men wear fancy suits, although you will sometimes see men wearing dark-colored *kimono*. Families with someone who is turning twenty will often cook and eat red bean rice, known as *sekihan*.

The fourth most important holiday (or in this case, group of holidays) in Japan is **Golden Week**. Golden Week refers to the period in late April and early May that contains many Japanese national holidays grouped closely together.

The first holiday of Golden Week falls on April 29th and is called *Shōwa no Hi* (昭和の日) "Showa Day," which was the birthday of the former emperor Showa. The second holiday is *Kenpō Kinenbi* (憲法記念日), or "Constitution Memorial Day," which is held on May 3rd. The new Japanese constitution went into effect in 1947 on this day. Next comes *Midori no Hi* (みどりの日), which is "Greenery Day" or "Nature Day" on May 4th, during which the Japanese celebrate nature. The last holiday during Golden Week is *Kodomo no Hi* (こどもの日), or "Children's Day," which falls on May 5th. On this day, parents pray for a happy and healthy life for their children.

Many Japanese people will take paid time off on the intervening workdays, but it is not uncommon for some companies to close down completely and give their employees the entire week (and sometimes more) off. During this time, many people take a vacation and travel around the country or go abroad. As a result, airports and train stations become very crowded, plane ticket fees increase dramatically, and accommodation reservations become very hard to get, even in advance.

The third most important holiday in Japan is **O-bon**. *O-bon* is a Buddhist event where people pray for the repose of their ancestors' souls and remember the deceased. If you

are familiar with Mexico's Day of the Dead festival, *O-bon* is quite similar. *O-bon* takes place from the 13th to the 16th of August (celebrated from July 13-15 in some areas). During this time, Japanese people return to ancestral family places, and visit and clean their ancestors' graves. The Japanese believe that during this time, the ancestors' spirits return to this world to visit their relatives.

Traditionally, the Japanese perform *o-bon* dances, known as *bon odori*, visit graves, and make food offerings at house altars and temples. *Bon odori* is the most common custom during *O-bon*. People wearing *yukata* (a light kimono worn in summer) go to the neighborhood *bon odori* and dance around a stage. When *O-bon* comes to an end, floating lanterns (known as *tōrō nagashi*) are put into rivers, lakes, and seas to guide the spirits back to their world.

The exact customs of *O-bon* vary widely from region to region throughout Japan. One of the most famous *O-bon* traditions takes place in Kyoto and is known as *Gozan no Okuribi* or *Daimonji no Okuribi*. On the night of August 16th, at the end of the festival, fires are lit on the five mountains that surround Kyoto to send the visiting spirits back to the netherworld. The Japanese light Chinese characters and Buddhist-related markings etched into the side of the mountains on fire in this amazing display that marks the end of *O-bon*.

The second most important holiday in Japan is **Ōmisoka**, which is New Year's Eve. This day is very symbolic in Japan as it is the last day of the year and the day before New Year's Day, the most important day of the year. **Ōmisoka** is usually accompanied by a big cleaning known as **Ōsōji** (大掃除), which literally means "big cleaning," and is comparable to the concept of "spring cleaning." Many Japanese people use this opportunity to clear out clutter from the old year and tidy up their homes and offices for the start of the new year.

For dinner on **Ōmisoka**, many people like to have a bowl of *toshikoshi soba* (New Year's Eve Soba, a type of Japanese noodle). This tradition comes from the association of the long noodles with the wish of "living a long, healthy life."

Another popular event that takes place on **Ōmisoka** is the television show *Kōhaku Uta Gassen*, the "Red vs. White Singing Contest," which airs on public television station NHK and starts at 7:30 PM and goes until 11:45 PM. Popular singers and groups split into two teams, with women making up the red team and men making up the white team. A panel of judges casts votes to decide which team performed better, and the judges declare one side the winner at the end of the broadcast.

The most important holiday in Japan is **O-shōgatsu** (お正月) or **Gantan** (元旦), which is New Year's Day. Many people spend time with their families, and people who work or live far from their families often go back to their hometown for New Year's.

The time around New Year's Day is a time for many "firsts." It's customary to visit a shrine or temple for *hatsu-mōde*, the first shrine/temple visit of the year, although many people go at some point during the first week of the new year instead of on New Year's Day. Some people even go up to the mountains or drive to the coast so they can see the first sunrise of the New Year, known as *hatsu-hinode*. The first dream you have once the New Year starts is referred to as *hatsu-yume*, whose contents are traditionally said to foretell the dreamer's luck in the ensuing year.

Many different types of special foods are eaten on New Year's Day or on the surrounding days. The most famous is known as *O-sechi*, a variety of traditional Japanese New Year cuisine that has been around since the Heian Period (794-1185). Many families prepare their own *o-sechi* at home, but many families also buy pre-made *o-sechi* from a supermarket or a department store. Each dish in *o-sechi* has its own special meaning. Here are some examples:

1. *kinton* (金団), "sweet potato and chestnut," symbolizes wealth.
2. *kazunoko* (数の子), "salted herring roe," symbolizes a wish to have more children in the New Year. *kazu* (数) means "number" and *ko* (子) means "child."
3. *kuromame* (黒豆), "sweet black beans," symbolize a wish for health in the New Year. *Mame*, which means "bean," also has the meaning of "diligence" and "health."
4. *datemaki* (伊達巻), "a sweet omelet mixed with fish paste or mashed shrimp," symbolizes a wish for many auspicious days.
5. *tai* (鯛), "sea bream," symbolizes an auspicious event.
6. *kobumaki* (こぶまき), "rolled kelp with fish," symbolizes joy.
7. *tazukuri* (田作り), "small, dried sardines cooked in soy sauce," symbolize an abundant harvest.

While not a part of *o-sechi*, the Japanese also eat *o-zōni* (お雑煮), a soup containing mochi rice cakes, around New Year's. In the eastern part of Japan, the soup of *o-zōni* is usually clear, and in the western part of Japan, *miso* soup is more common.

On New Year's Day, there is a custom of parents and relatives giving money to their children. The money they give is known as *o-toshidama*, and in most cases, they place it in special little envelopes called *o-toshidama bukuro*. Another custom is the act of sending New Year's greeting postcards known as *nengajō*. This tradition is similar to the act of giving Christmas cards in the West, although *nengajō* have no religious significance. The Japanese often decorate *nengajō* with the present year's Chinese zodiac sign. The Chinese zodiac has a cycle of twelve years, each of which is represented by an animal. The post office stocks all of the *nengajō* mailed in late December and delivers them all at once on January 1st. Unlike Christmas cards, which can be mailed early, *nengajō* shouldn't arrive before New Year's Day.

LESSON NOTES

All About #10

Top 5 pop culture things/icons you need to know about Japan

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

10

GRAMMAR

All About Japanese Pop Culture

Japan is a country rich in pop culture that has started to gain recognition and popularity throughout the world. As popular culture changes quickly and drastically, we focus this lesson on the most recent pop culture. Please keep in mind that we wrote this lesson in 2009.

Popular Music

You might be surprised to learn that Japan boasts the second largest music industry in the world after the United States. Pop music is especially popular in Japan, although you can find all sorts of music in Japan done by Japanese artists, including rock, rap, hip-hop, reggae, and more.

Two groups in Japan that have enjoyed long-standing success are **Dreams Come True** and **Southern All Stars**. Dreams Come True is a duo made up of a vocalist and a bassist that has been around for over twenty years and spawned dozens of hit songs. Southern All Stars is composed of five members, two of which are husband and wife. They have enjoyed success with numerous top-ten singles and sixteen number one albums.

When it comes to female pop acts, three big names come to mind: **Ayumi Hamasaki**, **Namie Amuro**, and **Hikaru Utada**. Ayumi Hamasaki broke into the Japanese music scene with million-selling albums in the late '90s and has remained a huge seller ever since. Her musical style as well as fashion style seem to change with every record she releases, and many view her as a fashion leader, with many young girls copying her style. Namie Amuro became popular around the same time in the '90s as Ayumi Hamasaki. Namie Amuro is known not only for her strong singing voice, but also for her fast, high-energy dance moves that she pulls off while singing. Hikaru Utada debuted in Japan in 1999 when she was fifteen years old. Raised in both Japan and the United States, Utada is bilingual in both English and Japanese, and she records songs in both languages. Her debut album, *First Love*, is the highest-selling album in Japanese history, selling over seven million copies in Japan alone.

When it comes to male pop acts, a majority of them come from a talent agency known as **Johnny's Entertainment**, which trains and promotes male idol groups in Japan. Members of groups that belong to Johnny's Entertainment are known for being able to not only sing but also dance and act, making them well-rounded performers. Among the most well-known groups are SMAP, V6, Arashi, and Kinki Kids, with SMAP being the most recognizable. All five members of SMAP have become huge celebrities in their own rights, hosting their own TV and radio shows, regularly appearing in advertisements, and acting in numerous television shows and movies.

Popular Movies

Both imported Hollywood movies and domestic Japanese movies enjoy great popularity in Japan. Hollywood blockbusters such as *Pirates of the Caribbean*, the *Harry Potter* series, and the *Spiderman* series drew millions of moviegoers to theaters around the country. Recently, however, the popularity of domestic Japanese movies has been on the rise, with the annual box-office revenue for domestic movies hitting an all-time high in 2008.

Of the top Japanese films of 2008, the highest-grossing title was the animation film *Gake no Ue no Ponyo* ("Ponyo on the Cliff by the Sea"), which world-renowned animator Hayao Miyazaki directed. **Hayao Miyazaki** is very well-known not only in Japan but throughout the world for his collection of animated masterpieces he makes through his

production company Studio Ghibli. Some of his famous works include films such as *My Neighbor Totoro*, *Kiki's Delivery Service*, *Princess Mononoke*, and *Spirited Away*, which was the first anime film to win an Academy Award.

Popular Television

When it comes to Japanese television, some of the most popular genres are ones you won't often see abroad. This is especially true of the variety genre. **Variety shows**, true to their name, feature a variety of different content - cooking segments, comedy segments, skits, and quizzes are just some of what you'll find on a typical Japanese variety show. Variety shows often feature a large panel of currently popular celebrities and sometimes a studio audience.

Quiz shows that feature contestants (who are almost always celebrities) answering questions on numerous subjects, such as science, history, math, the Japanese language, pop culture, and so on, also enjoy great popularity. Reality shows that have experienced a surge in popularity in the West are almost nonexistent.

Japanese dramas are also very popular among Japanese people of all ages. Japanese dramas follow a quarter system, which means a majority of dramas only run for one season for an average of ten to twelve episodes. Unlike in the West, once a drama finishes its initial run, it ends for good. Exceptionally popular dramas may come back for a second season or more, but this is not common. Many current dramas running in Japan are adaptations of popular movies, comics, or animated shows. At the same time, foreign-made dramas enjoy their fair share of popularity. Television networks broadcast titles such as *24*, *Prison Break*, *Lost*, and *Heroes*, and they are widely available for rental at video stores around the country.

Popular Foreigners in Japan

There are many recognizable foreigners in Japan. Alongside the major movie stars and celebrities known all over the world are a handful of foreigners widely known in Japan yet virtually unknown in their home country.

One foreigner who has recently become a big hit in Japan goes by the name of **Jero**. His real name is Jerome White, Jr., and he is an African-American singer who was born and raised in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania. He has gained popularity singing *enka*, a traditional type of pop music that is especially popular among older people. The unique combination of Jero's background and age (twenty-six at the time of his debut) and the traditional Japanese music that he sings has drawn a lot of attention from the Japanese public and media.

In recent years, Japan has experienced a boom in the popularity of Korean entertainment, known as *hanyū*. It all started with the wildly popular Korean drama *Fuyu no Sonata*, which aired on NHK, *Nippon Hōsō Kyōkai*, the Japan Broadcasting Corporation, in 2004. This drama started a Korean entertainment phenomenon and made big stars out of the two leading actors, **Bae Yong Joon** and **Choi Ji Woo**. This has led to an influx of Korean entertainers in Japan, such as chart-topping boy band **Tōhōshinki**, male solo artist **Ryu Siwon**, and many more.

Foreigners have also made an impact in the world of Japanese sports. Two notable examples in the sumo world are **Kotoōshu** (from Bulgaria) and **Asashōryū** (from Mongolia). Both have drawn a lot of attention as foreigners who participate in the traditional sport of sumo.

Popular Japanese Men/Women Abroad

Quite a few Japanese people have made a name for themselves abroad in the worlds of entertainment, literature, and fashion.

Actor **Ken Watanabe** became a recognized name after appearing alongside Tom Cruise in the 2003 war film *The Last Samurai*. Takeshi Kitano gained worldwide attention as a filmmaker with the extraordinary success *Hanabi*, a film that went on to win numerous international awards.

Author **Haruki Murakami** is one of the most recognized names when it comes to contemporary Japanese literature. His works have been translated into thirty-four languages, and his stories have earned him acclaim and several awards, including the Yomiuri Prize and the Franz Kafka Prize.

Issey Miyake is the most well-known Japanese designer in the world, and he is considered the first Asian designer to gain worldwide recognition. Born in Hiroshima in 1938, he established the Miyake Design Studio in 1970 and started showing his clothing lines at the Paris collections in 1973. He is known for his designs that combine textile designs of the East with production methods and modern technology of the West. Today, you can purchase Issey Miyake's designs all around the world.

Popular Sports Figures

Baseball is arguably the most popular sport in Japan. The United States introduced baseball, or *yakyū*, as the Japanese know it, during the early Meiji Period. One of the most popular names of the Japanese baseball world both in Japan and abroad is **Ichiro Suzuki**. Ichiro Suzuki joined the Seattle Mariners in 2000, a move that many watched with great interest, as he was the first Japanese position player to play regularly for a Major League Baseball team. Other familiar names in baseball include **Hideki Matsui**, who plays for the New York Yankees, and **Daisuke Matsuzaka**, who plays for the Boston Red Sox.

In the figure skating world, **Shizuka Arakawa** made headlines when she received a gold medal in the 2006 Winter Olympics, a first in the event for a Japanese skater. These days a lot of global attention is on **Mao Asada**, who currently ranks third in the world in the International Skating Union World Standings for women.

LESSON NOTES

All About #11

Top 5 Tools for Learning Japanese

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

11

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Tools for Learning Japanese

The focus of this lesson is to suggest the top five useful tools you can use to learn Japanese.

Some great tools to aid you in your Japanese studies include the following:

1. Rikaichan

Rikaichan is a popup dictionary extension for the Firefox Internet browser that translates Japanese into English, German, French, or Russian. With this extension installed, you can easily look up the meaning of Japanese words that show up on webpages by simply hovering the cursor over the word. A box will instantly pop up with the reading and definition of the word. Rikaichan is very easy to use and is a must when navigating Japanese webpages.

Link: Rikaichan website: <http://www.polarcloud.com/rikaichan/>

2. Rikaichan Kanji Dictionary

Rikaichan not only translates words, but also gives you detailed information on *kanji*. Hover the cursor over any *kanji*, whether it is part of a compound or by itself, and press the Shift or Enter key to toggle between the word, *kanji*, and name dictionaries. The *kanji* dictionary gives detailed information that include the *kanji*'s meaning, all possible readings, radicals that make up the *kanji*, number of strokes, and more. This *kanji* dictionary is a part of the Rikaichan add-on mentioned above, so there's no need for a separate program.

Link: Rikaichan website: <http://www.polarcloud.com/rikaichan/>

3. Eijiro Dictionary

Eijiro is an English-Japanese/Japanese-English dictionary with an extensive database of translations and sample sentences. A group of professional translators put it together and continue to update it regularly. As a result, Eijiro contains a huge number of difficult and obscure terms, colloquial expressions, and technical terms. You can buy Eijiro online at the ALC Online Shop website in the form of a CD-R or a downloadable dictionary file, and a free online version of Eijiro is available through the SpaceALC Japanese website portal.

Links: ALC Online Shop: <http://shop.alc.co.jp/top/>

SpaceALC (free online version of Eijiro): <http://www.alc.co.jp/>

4. Anki

Anki is a flashcard program that lets you review vocabulary, *kanji*, or both! This program is based on a theory called spaced repetition, which means it presents the learner with flashcards at certain calculated intervals. This system is based on research that shows that when you repeat new material to learn it, the interval at which you repeat it makes a big difference. The flashcard system in Anki is very flexible and customizable, making it a great tool for learning and retaining vocabulary and *kanji*.

Link: Anki website: <http://ichi2.net/anki/index.html>

5. Lang-8

Lang-8 is a Social Networking Service (SNS) created for the purpose of language exchange and international communication. Once you register, which is free, you can write a journal entry in the language you are studying, and other users who are native speakers of that language can correct your entry. In turn, you can also correct the journal

entries of those who are studying your native language. Many people studying Japanese use Lang-8 to have native speakers correct their journal entries written in Japanese. Even if you are just getting started with Japanese, this is a good way to practice reading and writing in Japanese as well as receive valuable feedback!

Link: Lang-8: <http://www.lang-8.com/>

LESSON NOTES

All About #12

Top 5 Classroom Phrases in Japanese

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

12

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top 5 Classroom Phrases in Japanese

In this lesson, we'll teach you the top five useful classroom phrases in Japanese, and then some!

1. "Please say it." / "Please repeat."

Itte kudasai (言ってください) means "please say it." As a variation, you might also hear *ripīto shite kudasai* (リピートしてください), which means "please repeat (after me)," when teachers want you to repeat exactly what they have said.

2. "Please look."

Mite kudasai (みてください) means "please look," and when an object comes before the phrase, it means "please look at (object). For example, *howaito bōdo, mite kudasai* (ホワイトボード、みてください) means "please look at the whiteboard".

3. "Please read."

Yonde kudasai (読んでください) means "please read."

You can expect to hear this phrase if a teacher wants you to practice reading some word, phrase, or passage. For example, *tekisuto, yonde kudasai* (テキスト、読んでください) means "please read your textbook".

4. "Please write it."

Kaite kudasai (書いてください) means "please write it."

Teachers may use this phrase when they want you to practice writing some *hiragana*, *katakana*, or even *kanji*!

5. "Do you understand?"

The most direct translation is *wakarimasu ka?* (わかりますか?).

Other variations Japanese teachers often use include *daijōbu desu ka?* (大丈夫ですか?) and *ii desu ka?* (いいですか?), which both literally translate to "Is it/everything okay?" Teachers often use these questions to confirm understanding. If teachers want to ask whether there are any questions, they might also ask *shitsumon arimasu ka?* (質問ありますか?), which means "Are there any questions?"

LESSON NOTES

All About #13

Top 5 Phrases Your Teacher Will Never Teach You

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

13

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Phrases Your Teacher Will Never Teach You

The focus of this lesson is teaching you some very common Japanese expressions you might not learn from a Japanese teacher.

1. *Sugoi* (すごい)

Sugoi is an adjective meaning "wow," "amazing," or "great." This word is commonly heard and is often used when one hears or sees something interesting or unusual.

2. *Baka* (バカ)

Baka is a noun meaning "idiot" or "fool." When used as *baka na* (バカな), it becomes an adjective meaning "stupid." This word can either be insulting or playful depending on how it is used. When used in a serious manner, it can come across as a strong insult, so it's better to exercise caution with this word. When used as a joke among friends, it can come off as playful.

3. *Uso* (うそ!)

Uso literally means "lie," but when used as an exclamation, it corresponds to "No way!" or "Really!?" in English. If someone says this in response to something you have said, don't worry—they're not calling you a liar, but rather expressing surprise or disbelief.

4. Words used by young people:

Chō (超)

Chō is a slangy adverb that usually comes before adjectives to emphasize them, making this word the equivalent of "very," "so," or "really." For example, *muzukashii* means "difficult," so *chō muzukashii* would mean "really difficult," or "so difficult."

Yabai (やばい)

Yabai is a very slangy word that has a few different meanings. When used as an exclamation (*yabai!*), it usually indicates that something is wrong and roughly means "oh no!" or "shoot!" When used to describe something, it can have both a good meaning and a bad meaning depending on the context. For example, *Kono eiga wa yabai!* ("This movie is *yabai!*") could either mean that the movie was great or that it was bad.

Maji (マジ)

Maji is similar to *chō* in that it often comes before adjectives to emphasize them. When used as *maji de?!* (マジで?!), it becomes an exclamation meaning "Really?!" or "Are you serious?!"

Sugē (すげー)

Sugē is a colloquial version of the above-mentioned *sugoi*. In young people's speech (and particularly in young male speech), the "-oi" and "-ai" word endings turn into an "eh" sound.

5. *Aizuchi*

Aizuchi are frequent interjections listeners make during a Japanese conversation that show the listener is paying attention to and understanding the speaker. Some common ones include:

Sō sō / Da yo ne~ (そうそう / だよね~)

"Yeah" or "I know~" (expressing agreement)

Un un (うん うん)

"Okay" or "Yeah". Sometimes used just to show that you are listening.

Hē (へえー)

"Whoa!" or "Oh!" This is often used to show that you are impressed or that you didn't know something.

LESSON NOTES

All About #14

Top 5 Tips for Avoiding Common Mistakes in Japanese

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

14

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Tips for Avoiding Common Mistakes in Japanese

In this lesson, we'll offer tips to help you overcome some common errors that learners of Japanese make.

Tip #1:

Don't Attach *-san* to Your Own Name!

One of the first things English speakers learn in Japanese is name suffixes used when addressing other people. The most common one is *-san*, which we attach to people's first or last names to show respect. We learn that someone whose last name is Tanaka is always referred to as Tanaka-san, someone whose last name is Saito becomes Saito-san, and so on.

In a classroom setting, teachers refer to students using *-san* as well, such as John-san, or Sarah-san. When it comes time to introduce themselves, it is common for students to slip up and refer to themselves with *-san* attached to their names. Because we use *-san* to show respect for others, you should never use it to refer to yourself.

Correct:

○ 私はジョンです。

(*Watashi wa John desu.*)

"I'm John."

Incorrect:

× 私はジョンさんです。

(*Watashi wa John-san desu.*)

Tip #2:

Watch Your Politeness Level!

One of the unique aspects of Japanese is the varying politeness levels that change according to a number of factors: age and status of the speaker and listener, the speaker's relationship with the listener, and so on. Learners of Japanese are generally taught the formal speech style first, followed by a more casual, informal speech style. It is important to remember to speak formally to one's teachers, elders, and anyone else who follows under the category of *senpai*, those who are of higher status. Learners who learn the informal speech style first, or who spend a lot of time speaking informally with friends, might have trouble switching back to formal speech.

Correct usage to a superior:

○ 昼ごはん、食べましたか？

(*Hiru go-han, tabemashita ka?*)

"Did you eat lunch?" (formal)

Incorrect usage to a superior:

× 昼ごはん、食べた？

(*Hiru go-han, tabeta?*)

"Did you eat lunch?" (informal)

Tip #3:

Watch Your Gender!

In the Japanese language, the speaker's gender plays an important role in determining word choice, tone of voice, and the types of expressions used. Non-native male speakers in particular should be careful about the kind of language and intonation they pick up from female teachers as well as female friends or girlfriends. We recommend that you listen to both males and females speak Japanese so you can grasp the subtle differences between male and female speech.

Tip #4:

Learn Your Long Vowels Now!

In Japanese, there is a big distinction between long vowels and short vowels. In fact, the distinction is so big that the length of a vowel can change the meaning of a word! Simply mistaking the length of a vowel can result in a misunderstanding, which is why it is important to pay attention to long vowels as you learn new Japanese vocabulary.

かど vs. カード

(*kado*) (*kaado*)

"corner" "card"

来てください vs. 聞いてください

(*Kite kudasai*) (*Kiite kudasai*)

"Please come" "Please listen"

Tip #5:

Watch Out for Similar Sounding Words!

Because there are a relatively small number of possible sounds in Japanese, many words are exactly the same or almost the same but with different meanings. As a beginner in Japanese, it can be easy to mix up similar sounding words.

Some infamous examples include:

kirei (きれい), meaning "pretty" vs. *kirai* (きらい), meaning "hated"

kawaii (かわいい), meaning "cute" vs. *kowai* (こわい), meaning "scary"

hiro (ひろい), meaning "spacious" vs. *hidoi* (ひどい), meaning "terrible"

LESSON NOTES

All About #15

The Best Japanese Phrases - Learn Your Japanese Teacher's Favorite Phrases

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

15

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is The Best Japanese Phrases - Learn Your Japanese Teacher's Favorite Phrases

1. *sō ieba* (そういえば)

This phrase means "speaking of which" or "now that you mention it, and you use it when you are reminded of something and want to talk about it. For example, let's say your friend is talking about party A that took place last week, and that reminds you of party B coming up next week. You can change the subject to party B by saying *sō ieba*, "speaking of parties," and start talking about it. Using *sō ieba* is a natural way to segue into something related to the conversation at hand.

2. *toriaezu* (とりあえず)

Toriaezu (とりあえず) is a handy phrase that means, "in the meantime" or "for now." You can use it to talk about some kind of action you take or decision you make "in the meantime" because for now, you feel like it's better than doing nothing. For example, if you don't know what to order at a restaurant, but at least you know what you want to drink, you can order your drinks using *toriaezu*; *toriaezu bīru* (とりあえずビール), which means, "I'll have a beer for now." The "while we're trying to decide" part is implied.

3. *ryōkai desu* (了解です)

Ryōkai is a word that means "comprehension" or "consent." It is often used as an exclamation in the following ways: by itself (*ryōkai!*), with the copula *desu* (*ryōkai desu!*), and with the past tense verb *shimashita* (*ryōkai shimashita!*). These are all used to show that you have understood and will comply with what someone has told you. The literal meaning of all of these variations is very close to "roger!" or "ten-four!" in English, but they can be used in a variety of formal and informal situations.

4. *tekitō ni* (適切に)

Tekitō (適切) is an adjective that literally means "suitable" or "relevant." When the particle *ni* (に) is added, however, it becomes an adverb. When used as an adverb to describe an action, the original meaning was that the action was done properly, but recently it has started to mean that the action was done "half-heartedly" or "without much care."

Example sentences

Tekitō ni benkyō shimashita. (適切に勉強しました。) - "I studied half-heartedly."

Tekitō ni chūmon shite. (適切に注文して。) - "I'll leave it to you to order/Just order whatever."

5. *tashika ni* (確かに)

The phrase *tashika ni* (確かに) is often used as *aizuchi*, a type of word that was introduced in All About Japanese No.13. *Aizuchi* are interjections that we say in response to someone who is speaking. When you use *tashika ni* after something that someone has said, it means that you agree with them on that point, even if you don't agree with them on other things. In this way, it's very similar to the phrases "true," "indeed," or "for sure!" in English.



Pronunciation

Basic 46 Sounds

1

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

Japanese Pronunciation Series #1 - Basic 46 Sounds

In this lesson, we will introduce you to the vowels and some of the syllables that make up the Japanese language.

Introduction

Before we get into the pronunciation, let's first review how Japanese sounds work. Japanese has a relatively small set of sounds compared with other languages, with only fourteen consonants (k, s, t, n, h, m, y, r, w, g, z, d, b, and p) and 5 vowels (a, e, i, o, and u). In Japanese, there are no such words as the English word "strength," which has clusters of three or more consonants. Japanese is made up of syllables, which are made up of a consonant and a vowel. The only exceptions are the vowels and the "n" sound, which stands alone.

Vowels

2

First we will go over Japanese vowels, which is one of the easiest areas of pronunciation. English has the same five vowels as Japanese (a, e, i, o, and u), but if you consider all of the ways you can pronounce English vowels, you end up with twenty different sounds! In Japanese, the sounds that the vowels make do not change. They sound very similar to the vowels found in Spanish or Italian. Let's take a look at them:

a - pronounced "ah," like the "a" in "father"

e - pronounced "eh," like the "e" in "net"

i - pronounced "ee," like the "ee" in "meet"

o - pronounced "oh," like the first part of the "o" sound in "so"

u - pronounced "oo," like the "oo" in "mood," but with the lips less rounded*

*Devoicing

There is one small exception for the pronunciations of "i" and "u" that we will call devoicing. That means that they become almost "whispered." This happens when these vowels come between two of the voiceless consonants: p, t, k, s, or h. For example, in words like shika ("deer") and hiku ("to pull"), the "i" sound is almost inaudible. This regularly occurs at the

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

ends of the grammatical endings desu and masu as well, which are pronounced [dess] and [mahs], respectively.

Consonants

As we mentioned before, Japanese has the following set of fourteen consonants: k, s, t, n, h, m, y, r, w, g, z, d, b, and p. Each one is paired with a vowel to create a syllable. In this lesson, we will cover consonants "k" through "w."

KA	KI	KU	KE	KO
か	き	く	け	こ

We pronounce the "k" syllables the same as in English.

SA	SHI	SU	SE	SO
さ	し	す	せ	そ

Note how si becomes shi. We pronounce the "s" syllables the same as in English.

TA	CHI	TSU	TE	TO
た	ち	つ	て	と

Note how ti becomes chi and tu becomes tsu. We pronounce most "t" syllables the same as in English, with the exception of tsu. While this sound does exist in English, it never comes at the beginning of a word as it often does in Japanese. This sound is the same as the "ts" in the word "cats." Try saying "cats" without the "ca" to make this sound.

NA	NI	NU	NE	NO
な	に	ぬ	ね	の

We pronounce the "n" syllables the same as in English.

HA	HI	FU	HE	HO
は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ

Note how hu becomes fu. We pronounce most "h" syllables the same as in English, with the exception of fu. The "f" sound in Japanese is a lot lighter than in English. When making this sound, blow air between the lips, and not between the lips and teeth. Imagine this sound as being a combination of both "h" and "f."

We pronounce the characters は and へ as "wa" and "e" when used as particles. Refer to the paragraph below for more information.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

MA	MI	MU	ME	MO
ま	み	む	め	も

We pronounce the "m" syllables the same as in English.

YA	YU	YO
や	ゆ	よ

We pronounce the "y" syllables the same as in English. Note that there are no "yi" and "ye" sounds in modern Japanese.

RA	RI	RU	RE	RO
ら	り	る	れ	ろ

When you make an "r" sound in English, you roll your tongue, but it doesn't touch the roof of your mouth. In Japanese, however, you lightly tap the roof of your mouth with your tongue to create an "r" sound. It is similar to a rolling "r," except that it is only done once. It might be easier to make this sound if you think of it like making a light "d" sound. For example, to correctly pronounce the Japanese name Eri, try saying the name "Eddy" quickly and you will get a sound that comes very close to the Japanese "r."

WA	WO
わ	を

We pronounce the "w" in wa the same as in English, but we pronounce wo simply as "o" in Japanese.

N
ん

The pronunciation of the "n" changes slightly depending on what kind of sound comes after it. Before "b," "p," and "m," it sounds more like an "m," as in shimbun ("newspaper"). Before "k" or "g," it sounds like "ng," as in genki ("energetic"). However, these differences are so slight that most Japanese people aren't even aware of them, so do not worry too much about trying to remember these rules. These sound changes occur naturally as you pronounce these words, but if you pronounce them a bit differently, people will still understand you.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Pronunciation of Particles

There are a few exceptions when it comes to pronunciation that are important to remember. The topic particle wa and direction particle e are written using characters that are different from their pronunciation.

Particle	Written as...	Pronounced as...
Topic Particle "wa"	は (literally, "ha")	わ (wa)
Direction Particle "e"	へ (literally, "he")	え (e)





Pronunciation

Additional 23 sounds

2

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

Japanese Pronunciation Series #2 - 23 Additional Sounds

In this lesson, we will introduce you to the rest of the syllables that make up the Japanese language.

Consonants Continued

In this lesson, we'll cover the rest of the consonant + vowel combinations that make up the Japanese sounds. The hiragana symbols we use to portray these sounds are not actually new - they are the same as the ones from the last lesson, only this time we have added a symbol that looks like a double quote, which we call *tenten* (`), to create a set of different sounds. In the case of the "P" syllables, we have added a circle mark called *maru* (°).

The "K" row becomes "G"

GA	GI	GU	GE	GO
が	ぎ	ぐ	げ	ご

We pronounce the "g" syllables the same as in English.

The "S" row becomes "Z"

ZA	JI	ZU	ZE	ZO
ざ	じ	ず	ぜ	ぞ

Note how zi becomes ji. We pronounce the "z" syllables the same as in English.

The "T" row becomes "D"

DA	JI	ZU	DE	DO
だ	ぢ	づ	で	ど

Note how di becomes ji and du becomes zu.* We pronounce the "d" syllables the same as in English.



The "H" row becomes "B" when adding a tenten (◌ゝ)

BA	BI	BU	BE	BO
ば	び	ぶ	べ	ぼ

We pronounce the "b" syllables the same as in English.

The "H" row becomes "P" when adding a maru (◌゜)

PA	PI	PU	PE	PO
ぱ	ぴ	ぷ	ぺ	ぽ

We pronounce the "p" syllables the same as in English.

*There are ji and zu sounds in both the "Z" row and the "D" row. We pronounce them the same, but じ and ず (from the "Z" row) are considered standard, and although ぢ and づ (from the "D" row) still show up in a handful of everyday words, they are not as common.

"New" Katakana Sounds

Because the range of syllables (spoken and written) in Japanese is limited, we cannot properly render many foreign sounds in Japanese, so we are unable to make distinctions between certain sets of sounds; for example, "r" and "l", and "s" and "th". The addition of "new" katakana characters has made it possible to represent new sounds into Japanese. Here, we'll go over a few of the more common ones.

FA	FI	FE	FO
ファ	フィ	フェ	フォ

Example words:

ファイル fairu ("file")

フィンランド Finrando ("Finland")

サンタフェ Santa fe ("Santa Fe")

아이폰 aifon ("iPhone")

VA	VI	VU	VE	VO
ヴァ	ヴィ	ヴ	ヴェ	ヴォ



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Example words:

ヴァイオリン vaiorin ("violin")

ヴィクトリア Vikutoria ("Victoria" (name))

デジャヴ deja vu ("déjà vu")

ラスヴェガス Rasu Vegasu ("Las Vegas")

TI	TU
テイ	トゥ

Pronounced in English as "tee" and "too."

Example word:

パーティー p t ("party")

DI	DU
ディ	ドゥ

Pronounced in English as "dee" and "doo."

Example word:

コメディー comed ("comedy")

TYU	DYU
テュ	デュ

Pronounced in English as "tyu" and "dyu."

Example word:

デュエット dyuetto ("duet")





Pronunciation

Combination Sounds

3

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

Japanese Pronunciation Series #3 - 33 Combination Sounds

Combination Sounds

In this lesson, we will introduce you to thirty-three combination sounds made using small ya, yu, and yo.

Combination sounds are the syllables you get when you combine a full-sized character with a small ya, yu, or yo. The full-sized character is from the second row of the hiragana chart (characters with "i").

KYA	KYU	KYO
きゃ	きゅ	きょ

Example words:

きゃく kyaku ("customer")

きゅう kyū ("nine")

きょか kyōka ("permission")

SHA	SHU	SHO
しゃ	しゅ	しょ

Example words:

しゃかい shakai ("society")

しゅみ shumi ("hobby")

しょくじ shokujī ("meal")

CHA	CHU	CHO
ちゃ	ちゅ	ちょ

Example words:



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

ちやいろ chairo ("brown")
ちゅんちゅん chunchun ("chirp chirp")
ちよくせつ chokusetsu ("direct")

NYA	NYU	NYO
にや	にゆ	によ

Example words:

ぐにやぐにや gunyagunya ("crooked")
ニューヨーク Ny y ku ("New York")
ニヨロニヨロ nyoronyoro ("slither")

HYA	HYU	HYO
ひや	ひゆ	ひよ

Example words:

ひやく hyaku ("one hundred")
ヒューストン Hy suton ("Houston (Texas))"
ひょう hy ("hail")

MYA	MYU	MYO
みや	みゆ	みよ

Example words:

みやく myaku ("pulse")
ミュージック my jikku ("music")
みょうじ my ji ("family name")

RYA	RYU	RYO
りや	りゆ	りよ

Example words:

りやく ryaku ("abbreviation")



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

りゅう ry ("dragon")
みりよく miryoku ("charm")

GYA	GYU	GYO
ぎゃ	ぎゅ	ぎょ

Example words:

ギャグ gyagu ("gag" (joke))
わぎゅう wagy ("Japanese beef")
きんぎょ kingyo ("goldfish")

JA	JU	JO
じゃ	じゅ	じょ

We write these sounds as ja, ju, and jo using the Hepburn romanization system, instead of jya, jyu, and jyo.

Example words:

ジャズ jazu ("jazz")
じゅんすい junsui ("pure")
じょうだん j dan ("joke")

BYA	BYU	BYO
びゃ	びゅ	びょ

Example words:

さんびゃく san-byaku ("three hundred")
デビュー deby ("debut")
びょうき by ki ("illness")

PYA	PYU	PYO
ぴゃ	ぴゅ	ぴょ

Example words:



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

はっぴゃく ha-ppyaku ("eight hundred")

ピュア pyua ("pure")

ぴょんぴょん pyonpyon ("hop hop")





Pronunciation

Double Consonants

4

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

Japanese Pronunciation Series #4 - Double consonants

In this lesson, we will introduce you to double consonants and show how they differ from single consonants.

Double Consonants

An important concept in Japanese pronunciation is double consonants, which can show up in the middle of a word (but not in the beginning). These double consonant clusters (kk, ss, tt, cc, etc.) differ from single consonants (k, s, t, c, etc.) in that it takes twice the amount of time to produce them. Think about the word "bookkeeper" in English. We almost pause in the middle as we take extra time to pronounce the double consonant cluster "kk." This is also how it works in Japanese. Whether a consonant is double or not can change the meaning of the word, making double consonants an important concept to learn. Compare the following examples:

Japanese	Translation	Japanese	Translation
かこ (kako)	"past"	かっこ (kakko)	"brackets"
にし (nishi)	"west"	にっし (nissshi)	"daily report"
スパイ (supai)	"spy"	すっぱい (suppai)	"sour"
かた (kata)	"shoulder"	かった (katta)	"won"
きて (kite)	"come"	きって (kitte)	"cut"
あさり (asari)	"clam"	あっさり (assari)	"plain"
いち (ichi)	"one"	いっち (icchi)	"accordance"

In some instances, the Japanese language uses a double "n." We hold this "n" sound for twice as long. Look at the following examples:

おんな(on'na)	"woman", "women"
ざんねん(zan'nen)	"regret", "unfortunate"

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

In some cases, the word meaning changes (as in the examples above) depending on whether there is one "n" or two:

こな (konna)	"this kind of"	こな (kona)	"flour"
ほんね (honne)	"true feelings"	ほね (hone)	"bone"

Pronunciation of "n" (ん)

Let's take a look at the pronunciation of the stand-alone "n" syllable. The pronunciation of this "n" changes slightly depending on what kind of sound comes after it. Before "b", "p", and "m", it sounds more like an "m" as in shimbun ("newspaper"). Before "k" or "g", it sounds like "ng", as in genki ("energetic"). However, these differences are so slight that most Japanese people aren't even aware of them, so do not worry too much about trying to remember these rules. These sound changes occur naturally as you pronounce these words, but if you pronounce them a bit differently, people will still understand you.

When "n" comes before...	The "n" sound changes to...	Example word	Sounds like...
b/p/m	m	しんぶん shinbun "newspaper"	shimbun
k/g	ng	げんき genki "energetic"	gengki





Pronunciation

Long vowels

5

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

Japanese Pronunciation Series #5 - Long vowels

The focus of this lesson is to introduce you to long vowels and explain how they differ from short vowels.

Long Vowels vs. Short Vowels

The concept of long and short vowel sounds is an important concept to understand when learning Japanese pronunciation. In Japanese, vowels can be lengthened, and there is a very distinct difference between long and short vowels. Note that in this lesson, a macron (small horizontal line over a vowel) denotes a long vowel that we hold for twice as long as a regular vowel.

Double vowels and vowel pairs	Sounds like...
あ <small>あ</small> a	あー ahh
い <small>い</small> i	いー ee
う <small>う</small> u	うー ooh
え <small>え</small> e え <small>え</small> i	えー ehh
お <small>お</small> o お <small>お</small> u	おー ohh

In many cases, whether the vowel is long or short will determine the meaning of the word. Let's illustrate this with some examples:

かど	カード
kado	k do
"corner"	"card"

In the case of k do ("card"), we hold the "a" sound for approximately twice as long as the "a" sound in kado ("corner"). As you can see, the meaning is very different depending on whether the vowel is long or short! Let's look at a few more examples:



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

おばさん	おばあさん
o-ba-san	o-b -san
"aunt"	"grandmother"

おじさん	おじいさん
o-ji-san	o-j -san
"uncle"	"grandfather"

くつ	くつう
kutsu	kuts
"shoes"	"pain"

エゴ	えいご
ego	eigo
"ego"	"English"

とる	とおる
toru	t ru
"to take"	"to pass through"

As you can see in the first chart above, the vowel combinations of "ei" and "ou" sound like " " and " ," respectively.

More examples:

Japanese	R maji	Translation	Sounds like...
せんせい	sensei	"teacher"	せんせー sens
どうも	doumo	"Thanks."	ドーも d mo

In the first word sensei, the combination of "e" + "i" sounds just a long "e" vowel. In the second word m , we have a combination of "o" + "u," but what we hear is only the "o" sound lengthened. We don't hear the "u" that comes at the end.





Gengo Japanese S1

Where Did You Learn to Speak Japanese Like That?!

1

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	2
English	3
Vocabulary	3

Kanji

Grammar Points 4
Cultural Insight 7

本田大介	アシュリーさん？
アシュリー	本田くん。こんにちは。
本田大介	出発は明日ですか。
アシュリー	いいえ。今日です。
本田大介	今日？
アシュリー	はい。
本田大介	あー、ニューヨークは朝ですか。
アシュリー	はい。今、四時です。 出発は十一時です。
本田大介	じゃ、よい旅を。
アシュリー	はい。じゃ、また、後で。

Kana

ほんだだいすけ	アシュリーさん？
アシュリー	ほんだくん。こんにちは。
ほんだだいすけ	しゅっぱつはあしたですか。
アシュリー	いいえ。きょうです。
ほんだだいすけ	きょう？
アシュリー	はい。
ほんだだいすけ	あー、ニューヨークはあさですか。
アシュリー	はい。いま、よじです。 しゅっぱつはじゅういちじです。
ほんだだいすけ	じゃ、よいたびを。
アシュリー	はい。じゃ、また、あとで。

Formal Romanization

Honda Daisuke	Ashur -san?
Ashur	Honda-kun.Konnichiwa.
Honda Daisuke	Shuppatsu wa ashita desu ka.
Ashur	lie. Ky desu.
Honda Daisuke	Ky ?
Ashur	Hai.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Honda Daisuke , Ny y ku wa asa desu ka.
Ashur Hai. Ima, yo-ji desu.
 Shuppatsu wa j ichi-ji desu.
Honda Daisuke Ja, yoi tabi o.
Ashur Hai. ja, mata, ato de.

English

Daisuke Honda Ashley?
Ashley Honda-kun! Hello!
Daisuke Honda Is your departure tomorrow?
Ashley No, it's today.
Daisuke Honda Today?
Ashley Yes.
Daisuke Honda Oh, is it morning in New York?
Ashley Yes. Right now, it's 4 o'clock.
 My departure is at 11.
Daisuke Honda Okay, have a nice trip!
Ashley Okay. Well, see you later!

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
さん	さん	san	polite name suffix, similar to Mr. or Ms.
君	くん	kun	name suffix often used for males younger or of lower status than you
こんにちは	こんにちは	Kon'nichi wa.	Hello.
出発	しゅっぱつ	shuppatsu	departure
明日	あした	ashita	tomorrow
いいえ	いいえ	iie	No.
今日	きょう	ky	today
はい	はい	hai	Yes.
ニューヨーク	ニューヨーク	Ny Y ku	New York
今	いま	ima	now
四時	よじ	yo-ji	four o'clock



朝	あさ	asa	morning
じゃあ or じゃ	じゃあ or じゃ	j or ja	well, well then, okay

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

田中さんは、パイロットです。

Tanaka-san wa pairotto desu.

Mr./Ms. Tanaka is a pilot.

田中君、こんにちは。

Tanaka-kun konnichiwa.

Hello, Mr. Tanaka.

こんにちは。はじめまして。

Kon'nichiwa. Hajimemashite.

Hello. Nice to meet you.

出発は何時ですか。

Shuppatsu wa nan-ji desu ka.

What time is the departure?

また、明日。

Mata, ashita.

See you tomorrow.

いいえ、ちがいます。

ie, chigaimasu.

No, that's wrong.

今日はクリスマスです。

Ky wa kurisumasu desu.

Today is Christmas.

A「田中さんですか。」 B「はい。」

A:Tanaka-san desu ka. B:Hai.

A: Are you Mr. Tanaka? B: Yes.

ニューヨークは、一時です。

Ny Y ku wa ichi-ji desu.

It's 1:00 in New York.

今、十一時です。

Ima, j ichi-ji desu.

It's 11 o'clock now.

四時です。

Yo-ji desu.

It's four o'clock.

今、朝四時です。

Ima, asa yo-ji desu.

It's four o'clock in the morning.

じゃ、また。

Ja, mata.

See you later.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #1 - Where did you learn to speak Japanese like that?!

今、四時です。

Ima, yo-ji desu.

"Right now, it's 4:00."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to make simple [A is B] sentences

Learn how to make simple [Is A B?] questions

Learn how to respond to questions with "yes" and "no"

Learn how to correctly address people with name suffixes such asan (さん)

[A is B] - Affirmative sentences

Simple [A is B] sentences follow the pattern of [A wa B desu]. Wa (は) is a particle that comes after the topic that the speaker is going to talk about, which is why wa (は) is often called the topic marking particle. The copula desu (です) roughly corresponds to the English verb "to be" and can mean "I am," "you are," "it is," and so on, depending on context.

Construction:

[A is B] = [A wa B desu]

Examples:

Japanese	Romaji	"English"
ケンパイロットです。	Ken wa pairotto desu.	"Ken is a pilot."
ケンはダンサーです。	Ken wa dans desu.	"Ken is a dancer."
しゅっぱつはきょうです。	Shuppatsu wa ky desu.	"My departure is today." ("I leave today.")
しゅっぱつはあしたです。	Shuppatsu wa ashita desu.	"My departure is tomorrow." ("I leave tomorrow.")

Note that when we already understand the topic from context, we can leave it out of the sentence completely. We saw this example in the dialog, where Ashley leaves the shuppatsu wa ("departure") part off of her answer because it's already understood:



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

1. 本田大介:出発は明日ですか。
Honda Daisuke: Shuppatsu wa ashita desu ka?
Daisuke Honda: "Is your departure tomorrow?"
2. アシュリー:いいえ。今日です。
Ashur : lie. Ky desu.
Ashley: "No, it's today."

[Is A B?] - Yes/No Questions

Adding ka (か) to the end of an affirmative sentence turns it into a question. The word order does not change as it does in English.

Construction:

[Is A B?] ~~wa~~ [A] desu ka?]

Examples:

Japanese	Romaji	English
しゅっぱつはきょうですか。	Shuppatsu wa ky desu ka.	"Is your departure today?" ("Are you leaving today?")
しゅっぱつはあしたですか。	Shuppatsu wa ashita desu ka.	"Is your departure tomorrow?" ("Are you leaving tomorrow?")

Responding with "Yes" and "No"

In the dialogue, we heard the words hai (はい) for "yes" and iie (いいえ) for "no."

Japanese	Romaji	English
はい	Hai	"Yes"



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

いいえ	lie	"No"
-----	-----	------

Along with the meaning of "yes," hai (はい) also has the meanings of "okay" and "right." We also use it to show that we are listening to or that we understand what someone is saying. It does not always mean that you are giving an affirmative answer. For more information on this, please see All About Japanese Lesson #5 (Top 5 Must Know Japanese Phrases).

Vocabulary Usage: Have a nice trip! and See you later!

じゃ、よい旅を。 [Ja, yoi tabi o.] "Have a nice trip!"

Let's look at the components of this phrase. Ja (じゃ) means "well then", yoi (よい) means "good", and tabi (旅) means "trip or travel". Yoi tabi o (よい旅を) is a set phrase that means "have a good trip", so Ja, yoi tabi o (じゃ、よい旅を) can be translated as "Well then... have a good trip!"

じゃ、また、後で。 [Ja, mata, ato de.] "Okay. Well, see you later!"

Let's look at the components of this phrase. Mata (また) means "again", and ato de (後で) means "later". This phrase literally means "Well then...later again", with the "see you" part inferred. This phrase can also be shortened to Ja mata (じゃまた) or Ja ato de (じゃあとで), or even just Ja (じゃ) by itself, which can mean "See ya" or "Bye".

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some numbers being used when Ashley and Daisuke talked about time. For more detailed information on numbers and how to tell time, please check the following Appendix lessons: Numbers (Appendix #1) and Times: Hours/Minutes (Appendix #2).

Cultural Insight

Addressing People with Name Suffixes

In the dialog, we heard two different name suffixes used when addressing people: -san and -kun. Let's take a look at these and other name suffixes used to address people in Japanese.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

We can use these suffixes after first names, last names, or full names.

Suffix	Romaji	Explanation	Examples
さん	san	Similar to "Mr." or "Mrs." or "Ms." in English. (formal)	"Ashley-san" "Peter-san"
くん	kun	Usually used after the names of boys or young men that the speaker is close with. Never used towards one's superiors.	"Honda-kun"
ちゃん	chan	Usually used after the names of girls and young children. (informal)	"Ashley-chan"
せんせい	sensei	Used after the names of teachers, doctors, and other authority figures. Can also be used on its own. (formal)	"Naomi-sensei"
さま	sama	Similar to san, but much more polite. Often used towards customers. (very formal)	"Ashley-sama" (as a customer)



Gengo Japanese S1

How to Make a First Impression in Japanese that Will Last a Lifetime

2

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	7

Formal Kanji

豊田一郎	(singing in Japanese)
アシュリー	すみません。
豊田一郎	(singing in Japanese)
アシュリー	あの、すみません。
豊田一郎	あ、すみません。どうぞ。
アシュリー	すみません。ありがとうございます。...。
	こんにちは。
豊田一郎	...あ、どうも。
アシュリー	私はアシュリーです。
	どうぞよろしくお願いします。
豊田一郎	あ、僕は豊田一郎です。
アシュリー	はい?...とよ らい ち?
	名前、もう一度お願いします。
豊田一郎	と・よ・た
アシュリー	とよた
豊田一郎	い・ち・ろ・う
アシュリー	いちろう・・・
	とよた いちろう さん
豊田一郎	はい。

Formal Kana

とよたいちろう	(singing in Japanese)
アシュリー	すみません。
とよたいちろう	(singing in Japanese)
アシュリー	あの、すみません。
とよたいちろう	あ、すみません。どうぞ。
アシュリー	すみません。ありがとうございます。...。
	こんにちは。
とよたいちろう	...あ、どうも。
アシュリー	わたしはアシュリーです。
	どうぞよろしくおねがいします。
とよたいちろう	あ、ぼくはとよたいちろうです。
アシュリー	はい?...とよ らい ち?
	なまえ、もういちどおねがいします。
とよたいちろう	と・よ・た

アシュリー とよた
とよたいちろう い・ち・ろ・う
アシュリー いちろう・・・
 とよた いちろう さん
とよたいちろう はい。

Formal Romanization

Toyoda Ichir (singing in Japanese)
Ashur Sumimasen.
Toyoda Ichir (singing in Japanese)
Ashur Ano, sumimasen.
Toyoda Ichir A, sumimasen. D zo.
Ashur Sumimasen. Arigat gozaimasu.....
 Konnichiwa.
Toyota Ichir ... A, d mo.
Ashur Watashi wa Ashur desu.
 D zo yoroshiku o-negai shimasu.
Toyota Ichir A, boku wa Toyota Ichir desu.
Ashur Hai?... Toyo rai chi?
 Namae, m ichido o-negai shimasu.
Toyota Ichir To. yo. ta
Ashur Toyota
Toyota Ichir I. chi. ro. u
Ashur Ichir ...
 Toyota Ichir -san
Toyota Ichir Hai.

English

Ichiro Toyota (singing in Japanese)
Ashley Excuse me.
Ichiro Toyota (singing in Japanese)
Ashley Um, excuse me...
Ichiro Toyota Oh, sorry. Go ahead.
Ashley Thanks. Thank you very much. ...
 Hello.



Ichiro Toyota Oh, hello.
 Ashley I'm Ashley.
 Nice to meet you.
 Ichiro Toyota Oh, I'm Ichiro Toyota.
 Ashley I'm sorry? Toyo...raichi...?
 Could you give me your name one more time?
 Ichiro Toyota To-yo-ta
 Ashley Toyota
 Ichiro Toyota I-chi-ro
 Ashley Ichiro...
 Mr. Ichiro Toyota.
 Ichiro Toyota Yes!

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
すみません	すみません	sumimasen	Excuse me, I'm sorry, Thank you
どうぞ	どうぞ	d zo	Go ahead, Here you are
ありがとうございます	ありがとうございます	Arigat gozaimasu.	Thank you. (formal)
あの・・・	あの・・・	ano...	um...
名前	なまえ	namae	name
どうも。	どうも。	D mo.	Thanks.
僕	ぼく	boku	I, me (used by males)
私	わたし	watashi	I, me

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

すみません。もう一度お願いします。
 はい、どうぞ。
 どうもありがとうございます。
 名前は、ヒロです。
 ぼくは、プロボクサーです。
 私は、田中です。

I'm sorry. Could you say that again?
 Here you go.
 Thank you very much.
 My (first) name is Hiro.
 I'm a professional boxer.
 I'm Tanaka.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #2 - How to make a First Impression in Japanese that Will Last a Lifetime
私はアシュリーです。どうぞよろしくお願ひします。

Watashi wa Ashur desu. D zo yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

"I'm Ashley. Nice to meet you."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to introduce yourself by giving your name

Learn the different uses of the phrase *sumimasen* (すみません)

Learn expressions that use the phrase *onegai shimasu* (お願ひします)

Introducing Yourself

When introducing yourself, start with *Watashi wa* (わたしは、"I"), then give your name, and end the phrase with *desu* (です). We first introduced this phrase in Basic Bootcamp Lesson #1.

Japanese	Romaji	English
わたしは [name]です。	Watashi wa [name] desu.	"I'm [name]."

Examples:

Japanese	Romaji	English
わたしはサラです。	Watashi wa Sara desu.	"I'm Sarah."
わたしはラウルです。	Watashi wa Raul desu.	"I'm Raul."

Note that there are different ways to refer to oneself in Japanese. In the dialogue, we saw the first two examples being used.

Pronoun	Romaji	Explanation
わたし (私)	watashi	The standard word for "I." Both men and women can use this.
ぼく (僕)	boku	Used mainly by men and young boys.
おれ (俺)	ore	This is a rough, informal way to refer to oneself used mainly by men and young boys.
わたくし	watakushi	This is a very polite way to refer to oneself. Both men and women can use this.
あたし	atashi	This is an informal way to refer to oneself mainly used by women.



Three Different Uses of すみません (sumimasen)

In this dialogue, we used sumimasen (すみません) in three different ways. Let's take a look at the different meanings of sumimasen (すみません).

"Excuse me"

It can be used to get someone's attention if you need to say something or make your way through a crowd.

アシュリー: あの、すみません。

Ashur: sumimasen.

Ashley: "Um, excuse me..."

"I'm sorry"

It can be used to lightly apologize.

豊田一郎: あ、すみません。どうぞ。

Toyota Ichir : A, sumimasen. D zo.

Ichiro Toyota: "Oh, sorry. Go ahead."

"Thank you"

It can be used to thank someone for doing something for you.

アシュリー: すみません。ありがとうございます。

Ashur : Sumimasen. Arigat gozaimasu.

Ashley: "Thanks. Thank you very much."

Phrases That Use onegai shimasu (お願いします)

There are many different uses for onegai shimasu (お願いします). Here we'll look at three different phrases that use onegai shimasu (お願いします).

Yoroshiku onegai shimasu (よろしくお願いします)

First introduced in Basic Bootcamp #1

This phrase is often used when meeting someone for the first time. English does not have an equivalent, but literally, this phrase roughly translates to, "Please look favorably upon me."

Using this phrase shows respect for the person you are meeting, and indicates that you are looking forward to a good relationship with them. Whether you are meeting one person or fifty, using this phrase will make a great impression.

D zo yoroshiku onegai shimasu (どうぞよろしくお願ひします)

This phrase is the same as the one above, but the added d zo (どうぞ) makes it even more formal.

M ichido onegai shimasu (もう一度お願ひします)

First introduced in Basic Bootcamp #3

M ichido (もういちど) means, "one more time," so this phrase literally means "one more time, please" and can be used when you are asking someone to repeat something.

Cultural Insight

Difficulty with Names

When you are a beginner in a foreign language, it can be difficult catching names in that foreign language, and this goes for Japanese as well. Many names sound similar, and you might not be able to tell where someone's last name ends and first name starts! If you have trouble catching someone's name, don't hesitate to ask them to repeat it. To ask someone to repeat their name, you can use the phrase mentioned in this lesson, M ichido onegai shimasu (もう一度お願ひします), which literally means "One more time, please." Similarly, when you are introducing yourself and giving your name, make sure that you say it slowly and clearly so that you are understood. And remember, don't add the polite suffix -san (さん) to your own name!



Gengo Japanese S1

Do People Understand Where You're Coming From?

3

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	2
English	3
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	8

Formal Kanji

アシュリー 豊田一郎さん
豊田一郎 はい？豊田です。
アシュリー 豊田さん、それは、スマップですか。
豊田一郎 はい？
アシュリー スマップの歌ですか。
豊田一郎 ああ、はい。スマップの歌です。
アシュリーさんの出身はニューヨークですか。
アシュリー はい。豊田さんの出身はどこですか。
豊田一郎 僕の出身は東京です。
アシュリー 豊田さんは学生ですか。
豊田一郎 ありがとうございます！
でも違います。

Formal Kana

アシュリー とよたいちろうさん
とよたいちろう はい？とよたです。
アシュリー とよたさん、それは、スマップですか。
とよたいちろう はい？
アシュリー スマップのうたですか。
とよたいちろう ああ、はい。スマップのうたです。
アシュリーさんのしゅっしんはニューヨークですか。
アシュリー はい。とよたさんのしゅっしんはどこですか。
とよたいちろう ぼくのしゅっしんはとうきょうです。
アシュリー とよたさんはがくせいですか。
とよたいちろう ありがとうございます！
でもちがいます。

Formal Romanization

Ashur Toyota Ichir -san
Toyota Ichir Hai? Toyota desu.
Ashur Toyota-san, sore wa, Sumappu desu ka.
Toyota Ichir Hai?

Ashur Sumappu no uta desu ka.
Toyota Ichir , hai. Sumappu no uta desu.
Ashur -san no shusshin wa Ny y ku desu ka.
Ashur Hai. Toyota-san no shusshin wa doko desu ka.
Toyota Ichir Boku no shusshin wa T ky desu.
Ashur Toyota-san wa gakusei desu ka.
Toyota Ichir Arigat gozaimasu!
Demo chigaimasu.

English

Ashley Ichiro Toyota-san
Ichiro Toyota Yes? Just Toyota is fine.
Ashley Toyota-san, is that SMAP?
Ichiro Toyota I'm sorry?
Ashley Is that song by SMAP?
Ichiro Toyota Ohh, yes! It's a song by SMAP.
Are you from New York?
Ashley Yes. Where are you from?
Ichiro Toyota I'm from Tokyo.
Ashley Are you a student?
Ichiro Toyota Why, thank you very much (for the compliment)!
But no, I'm not.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
出身	しゅっしん	shusshin	hometown
東京	とうきょう	T ky	Tokyo (current capital of Japan)
学生	がくせい	gakusei	student
歌	うた	uta	song
でも	でも	demo	but, however
違います	ちがいます	chigaimasu	to differ, incorrect
どこ	どこ	doko	where

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

出身はどこですか。	Where are you from?
出身は東京です。	I'm from Tokyo.
ぼくは学生です。	I'm a student.(informal, male speech)
宇多田ヒカルの歌です。	This is a song by Utada Hikaru.
私は、日本人です。でも、出身はニューヨークです。	I'm Japanese, but I'm from New York.
それは、違います。	That's not right.
マリアさんの出身はどこですか。	Where is Maria from(originally)?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #3 - Do People Understand Where You're Coming From?

スマップの歌です。アシュリーさんの出身はニューヨークですか。

Sumappu no uta desu. Ashur -san no shusshin wa Ny Y ku desu ka.

"It's a song by SMAP. Are you from New York?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to talk about things that belong to you or other people

Learn how to ask "Where are you from?" and how to answer the same question

Talking About Possession

We use the possessive particle no (の) between two nouns, indicating that the first noun possesses the second noun or that the first noun is modifying the second.

Noun 1	Possessive Particle	Noun 2	Translation
アシュリーさん Ashur -san)	の (no)	出身 (shusshin)	"Ashley's hometown"
わたし(Watashi)	の (no)	名前 (namae)	"My name"
ぼく (Boku)	の (no)	名前(namae)	"My name" (masculine)

Sample Sentences



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

アシュリーさんの出身はニューヨークです。

Ashur -san no shusshin wa Ny Y ku desu.

"Ashley is from New York." (literally, "Ashley's hometown is New York.")

- 私の名前はサラです。

Watashi no namae wa Sara desu.

"My name is Sarah."

- 僕の名前はリックです。

Boku no namae wa Rikku desu.

"My name is Rick."

"Where are you from? I'm from..."

The keyword we use when talking about where you (or someone else) is from is shusshin (出身), which refers to the place where one originally came from (this can refer to a town, city, country, etc.).

Asking where one is from

To ask where someone is from, we start out with the keyword shusshin (出身). To this we add the topic marking particle wa (は), the word doko (どこ) which means, "where," and the copula desu (です) topped off with the question particle ka (か).

Japanese	Romaji	English
出身はどこですか。	Shusshin wa doko desu ka?	"Where are you from?"

(あなたの)出身はどこですか ([Anata no] shusshin wa doko desu ka) is the original sentence, but since using anata ("you") is considered too direct in Japanese culture, we usually omit anata no ("your").

To be more specific, you can add the person's name plus no (の) before shusshin (出身).

Example:

1. アシュリーさんの出身はどこですか？

Ashur -san no shusshin wa doko desu ka?

"Where are you from, Ashley?"

Answering

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

When we answer this question, we use the possessive particle no (の) that we just learned above. Watashi no shusshin (私の出身) means, "my hometown."

My Hometown	(place)	copula	English
私の出身は (Watashi no shusshin wa)	(place)	です。 (desu.)	"I'm from (place)."

Examples:

1. 私の出身はアメリカです。
Watashi no shusshin wa Amerika desu.
"I'm from America."
2. 私の出身はオーストラリアです。
Watashi no shusshin wa sutoraria desu.
"I'm from Australia."
3. 僕の出身はイギリスです。
Boku no shusshin wa Igrisu desu.
"I'm from England."

Lastly, let's compare side-by-side the three phrases using shusshin (出身):

Affirmative: "Ashley is from New York."

Japanese	アシュリーさんの	出身は	ニューヨーク	です。
Romaji	Ashur-san no	shusshin wa	Ny Y ku	desu.

Yes/No Question: "Is Ashley from New York?"

All you have to do is add the question marking particle ka (か) to the end of the affirmative sentence.

Japanese	アシュリーさんの	出身は	ニューヨーク	です	か？
Romaji	Ashur-san no	shusshin wa	Ny Y ku	desu	ka?

WH-question ("where"): "Where is Ashley from?"

Use the question word doko (どこ), meaning "where," instead of New York.

Japanese	アシュリーさんの	出身は	どこ	です	か？
Romaji	Ashur-san no	shusshin wa	doko	desu	ka?

Vocabulary Usage: Ko-so-a-do Words

Demonstrative words are words used to specify what you are talking about. In Japanese, there are three main categories ("this," "that," and "that over there") and one category for questions. We refer to these as ko-so-a-do words.

The prefix tells us a location:

Prefix	"Location"
こ ko	"here, near"
そ so	"there, not far off"
あ a	"there, at a distance"
ど do	(not location but question marker)

In the dialog, we saw the word sore (それ), which means "that" or "that one". Let's take a look at the other Ko-so-a-do words in this series:

Japanese	Romaji	English
これ	kore	"this one"
それ	sore	"that one"
あれ	are	"that one" (over there)
どれ	dore	"which one"

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we introduced one set of Ko-so-a-do phrases as well as the question word "where" (doko, どこ). For more detailed information on other Ko-so-a-do phrases and question words, please check the following Appendix lessons: Ko-so-a-do Words (Appendix #9) and Question Words (Appendix #10).

Cultural Insight

Which Name Should You Use?

In the dialogue, Ichiro laughed when Ashley called him by his full name. This is because, in Japanese, calling someone by their full name is not that common and can sound a little strange. When addressing someone you don't know very well, it is best to address them with their last name plus the polite suffix -san (さん), which was discussed in the last lesson. It is likely that if someone wants you to call them by a different name (for example, their first name, or a nickname) they will let you know.

LESSON NOTES

Gengo Japanese S1 #4

Japanese Phrases You'll Use Everyday

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 3 Romanization
- 4 English
- 5 Vocabulary
- 6 Sample Sentences
- 7 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

4

KANJI

1. 豊田一郎: 僕はフォトジャーナリストです。
2. アシュリー: ヘー。すごい。
3. 豊田一郎: アシュリーさんは？
4. FLIGHT ATTENDANT: Black tea, coffee or Japanese tea?
5. アシュリー: あ、日本茶、お願いします。
6. FLIGHT ATTENDANT: 日本茶ですね。
はい、どうぞ。お客様は？
7. 豊田一郎: 紅茶、お願いします。
8. FLIGHT ATTENDANT: お砂糖とミルクは？
9. 豊田一郎: お願いします。
10. (Takes a sip)
11. 豊田一郎: あちっ！
12. アシュリー: 大丈夫ですか。熱いですか。
(takes a sip) あちっ。(coughs)まずいです。
13. 豊田一郎: シーツ。(laughs)

KANA

CONT'D OVER

1. とよたいちろう: ぼくはフォトジャーナリストです。
2. アシュリー: ヘー。すごい。
3. とよたいちろう: アシュリーさんは？
4. FLIGHT Black tea, coffee or Japanese tea?
ATTENDANT:
5. アシュリー: あ、にほんちゃ、おねがいします。
6. FLIGHT にほんちゃですね。
ATTENDANT: はい、どうぞ。おきゃくさまは？
7. とよたいちろう: こうちゃ、おねがいします。
8. FLIGHT おさとうとミルクは？
ATTENDANT:
9. とよたいちろう: おねがいします。
10. (Takes a sip)
11. とよたいちろう: あちっ！
12. アシュリー: だいじょうぶですか。あついですか。
(takes a sip) あちっ。(coughs)まずいです。
13. とよたいちろう: シーツ。(laughs)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. TOYOTA ICHIRŌ: Boku wa foto jānarisuto desu.
2. ASHURĪ: Hē. Sugoi.
3. TOYOTA ICHIRŌ: Ashurī-san wa?
4. FLIGHT ATTENDANT: Black tea, coffee or Japanese tea?
5. ASHURĪ: A, nihoncha, onegai shimasu.
6. FLIGHT ATTENDANT: Nihoncha desu ne.
Hai, dōzo. O-kyaku-sama wa?
7. TOYOTA ICHIRŌ: Kōcha, onegai shimasu.
8. FLIGHT ATTENDANT: O-satō to miruku wa?
9. TOYOTA ICHIRŌ: Onegai shimasu.
10. (Takes a sip)
11. TOYOTA ICHIRŌ: Achi!
12. ASHURĪ: Daijōbu desu ka. Atsui desu ka.
(takes a sip) Achi! (coughs) Mazui desu.
13. TOYOTA ICHIRŌ: Shī.(laughs)

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. ICHIRO TOYOTA: I'm a photojournalist.
2. ASHLEY: Oh, wow!
3. ICHIRO TOYOTA: How about you?
4. FLIGHT ATTENDANT: Black tea, coffee, or Japanese tea?
5. ASHLEY: Oh, Japanese tea please.
6. FLIGHT ATTENDANT: Japanese tea, here you are. How about you, sir?
7. ICHIRO TOYOTA: Black tea, please.
8. FLIGHT ATTENDANT: Would you like sugar and milk?
9. ICHIRO TOYOTA: Yes, please.
10. (takes a sip)
11. ICHIRO TOYOTA: It's hot!
12. ASHLEY: Are you okay? It's hot? (takes a sip) It's hot! (coughs) It tastes awful.
13. ICHIRO TOYOTA: Shhhh! (laughs)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
-------	------	--------	---------

フォトジャーナリス ト	フォトジャーナリス ト	fotojānarisuto	photojournalist
大丈夫	だいじょうぶ	daijōbu	all right, okay
あちっ	あちっ	achi	It's hot! (from あつい/ atsui)
ミルク	ミルク	miruku	milk
砂糖	さとう	satō	sugar
紅茶	こうちゃ	kōcha	black tea
お客様	おきゃくさま	o-kyaku-sama	customer
まずい	まずい	mazui	tastes bad, distasteful; Adj(i)
日本茶	にほんちゃ	Nihoncha	Japanese tea
すごい	すごい	sugoi	wow, great, amazing; Adj(i)
熱い	あつい	atsui	hot (thing)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>私は、フォトジャーナリストです。 <i>Watashi wa fotojānarisuto desu.</i></p> <p>I'm a photojournalist.</p>	<p>私は大丈夫です。 <i>Watashi wa daijōbu desu.</i></p> <p>I'm all right.</p>
<p>あちっ。この紅茶は熱い。 <i>Achi. Kono kōcha wa atsui.</i></p> <p>It's hot! This tea is hot.</p>	<p>お砂糖とミルク、お願いします。 <i>O-satō to miruku, onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>I'd like some sugar and milk, please.</p>
<p>砂糖、お願いします。 <i>Satō, o-negaishimasu.</i></p> <p>I'd like sugar, please.</p>	<p>ケーキと紅茶、お願いします。 <i>Kēki to kōcha onegaishimasu.</i></p> <p>Cake and tea, please.</p>

<p>お客様、すみません。 <i>O-kyaku-sama, sumimasen.</i></p> <p>Excuse me, sir/ma'am.</p>	<p>これは、まずいです。 <i>Kore wa mazui desu.</i></p> <p>This doesn't taste good.</p>
<p>それは、日本茶ですか。 <i>Sore wa nihon-cha desu ka.</i></p> <p>Is that Japanese tea?</p>	<p>東京はすごいです。 <i>Tōkyō wa sugoi desu.</i></p> <p>Tokyo is great.</p>
<p>紅茶は熱いですか。 <i>Kōcha wa atsui desu ka.</i></p> <p>Is the tea hot?</p>	

GRAMMAR

Gengo Japanese #4 - Japanese Phrases You'll Use Everyday

あ、日本茶、お願いします。

A, Nihon-cha, onegai shimasu.

"Oh, Japanese tea please."

In this lesson, you will:

- Learn how to ask for something using *onegai shimasu* (お願いします)
- Learn how to use *wa* (は) to abbreviate questions

Using *onegai shimasu* (お願いします)

In the last lesson, we learned some common phrases that incorporate the phrase *onegai shimasu* (お願いします). This time we'll learn how to ask for something using *onegai shimasu* (お願いします) after a noun. Simply put *onegai shimasu* (お願いします) after the noun to ask for that item. The direct object particle *o* (を) can be put after the item being requested, but it is not necessary.

Construction

[Noun + (o) *onegai shimasu* (お願いします)]

Example from the dialogue:

Item	(o) <i>onegai shimasu</i>	"English Translation"
日本茶 (<i>Nihoncha</i>)	(を) お願いします <i>onegai shimasu</i>	"Japanese tea, please."

More examples:

1. 紅茶(を)お願いします。
Kōcha (o) onegai shimasu.
"Black tea, please."
2. 砂糖(を)お願いします。
Satō (o) onegai shimasu.
"Sugar, please."

When you want two items, insert the particle to (と), meaning "and," between the items.

For example:

1. 日本茶とコーヒー(を)お願いします。
Nihoncha to kōhī (o) onegai shimasu.
"Japanese tea and coffee, please."

Using *wa* (は) to Abbreviate a Question

In spoken Japanese, it's very common to shorten phrases to only what is necessary. By leaving out what is already understood, your Japanese will sound more natural. Let's look at this example from the dialogue. Toyota-san stated his profession, and then asks Ashley about hers with the phrase:

1. アシユリーさんは？
Ashurī-san wa?
"How about you, (Ashley)?"

Using someone's name and attaching *wa* (は) with rising intonation is a very common way to ask someone a question they have just asked you, or to ask someone about the topic being discussed. It's very similar to "How about ~?" in English.

For example:

1. (when talking about drinks)
お客様は？
O-kyaku-sama wa?
"How about you, sir/ma'am?"
2. お砂糖とミルクは？
O-satō to miruku wa?
"Would you like sugar and milk?"

Vocabulary Building: Temperature-related Vocabulary

When it comes to talking about temperature, we use different words (or sometimes just different kanji) depending on whether you are talking about something being hot/cold to the touch, or hot/cold that you can feel in the atmosphere (as in the weather).

Words we use when talking about objects or liquids:

Japanese	Romaji	English
熱い	<i>atsui</i>	"hot"
冷たい	<i>tsumetai</i>	"cold"
温かい	<i>ataakai</i>	"warm"
ぬるい	<i>nurui</i>	"lukewarm"

Examples:

1. 熱いコーヒー
atsui kōhī
"hot coffee"
2. 冷たいビール
tsumetai bīru
"cold beer"

Words we use when talking about the temperature of the atmosphere:

Japanese	Romaji	English
暑い	<i>atsui</i>	"hot"
寒い	<i>samui</i>	"cold"
暖かい	<i>atatakai</i>	"warm"
涼しい	<i>suzushii</i>	"cool"

Examples:

1. 今日は暑いです。
Kyō wa atsui desu.
"It's hot today."
2. 今日は寒いですか？
Kyō wa samui desu ka?
"Is it cold today?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Japanese is Filled with Loan Words!

In the dialogue, we saw a lot of loan words, which are words adopted into Japanese from other languages. A few examples we saw are *foto jānarisuto* ("photo journalist") and *miruku* ("milk"). These are examples of loan words taken from English that are pronounced using the syllables of Japanese. Because Japanese has a limited number of sounds to work with, however, a lot of the time these loan words do not closely resemble the original words they come from! Many times loan words exist to give a name to something that was a foreign concept and didn't originally have a name in Japanese. An example of this is the loan word *fōku*, meaning "fork," because there was no name for fork in Japanese. On the other hand, some loan words also co-exist with their Japanese counterparts. The word we saw in the dialogue, *miruku* ("milk"), is an example of this. The Japanese word for milk is *gyūnyū*, and we often refer to milk that comes in a carton as *gyūnyū*. Milk that we add to tea and other drinks, however, is often referred to as *miruku*.



Gengo Japanese S1

Welcome to Japan! Avoid Instant Immersion Shock with this Lesson

5

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	2
English	3
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	6

Formal Kanji

- パイロット 皆様、機長の日野でございます。
成田国際空港、八月十六日、日曜日。
時間は午後三時十分でございます。
天気は晴れ。気温は摂氏三十度でございます。
- アシュリー ええ？三十度？寒い・・・。
豊田一郎 いえ、暑いです。
摂氏三十度です。
- アシュリー セッシ？
豊田一郎 摂氏はセルシウスです。
摂氏三十度は華氏八十六度です。

Formal Kana

- パイロット みなさま、きちょうのひのでございます。
なりたこくさいくこう、はちがつじゅうろくにち、にちようび
。じかんはごごさんじじゅうぷんでございます。
てんきははれ。きおんはせっしさんじゅうどでございます。
- アシュリー ええ？さんじゅうど？さむい・・・。
とよたいちろう いえ、あついです。
せっしさんじゅうどです。
- アシュリー セッシ？
とよたいちろう セッシはセルシウスです。
せっしさんじゅうどはかしはちじゅうろくどです。

Formal Romanization

- Pairotto Mina-sama, kich no Hino de gozaimasu.
Narita kokusai k k , hachi-gatsu j -roku-nichi, nichiy bi.
Jikan wa gogo san-ji ju-ppun de gozaimasu.
Tenki wa hare. Kion wa sesshi san-j -do de gozaimasu.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Ashur ? San-j -do? Samui...
Toyota Ichir , atsui desu.
Sesshi san-j -do desu.
Ashur Sesshi?
Toyota Ichir Sesshi wa serushiasu desu.
Sesshi san-j -do wa kashi hachi-j -roku-do desu.

English

Pilot Hello everyone, this is your captain Hino speaking.
At Narita Airport, it's Sunday, August 16th.
The local time is ten after three in the afternoon.
It's sunny, and the temperature is 30 degrees Celsius.

Ashley What? 30 degrees?? That's cold...
Ichiro Toyota No, it's hot!
It's 30 degrees "sesshi."
Ashley What's "sesshi?"
Ichiro Toyota "Sesshi" means Celsius.
30 degrees Celsius is 86 degrees Fahrenheit.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
皆様	みなさま	mina-sama	everyone, ladies and gentlemen
機長	きちょう	kich	plane captain
成田	なりた	Narita	Narita
国際空港	こくさいくうこう	kokusai k k	international airport
時間	じかん	jikan	time
天気	てんき	tenki	weather
晴れ	はれ	hare	sunny
寒い	さむい	samui	cold
暑い	あつい	atsui	hot
午後	ごご	gogo	afternoon, p.m.
日曜日	にちようび	nichiy bi	Sunday
気温	きおん	kion	temperature
度	ど	do	degree

摂氏	せっし	sesshi	Celsius
華氏	かし	kashi	Fahrenheit

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

皆様、おはようございます。

今日の機長は、古田です。

私の出身は成田です。

成田空港は国際空港です。

出発の時間は、4時です。

ロンドンの天気は晴れですか。

明日は、晴れですか。

カナダは寒いです。

今日は暑いです。

今 午後4時です。

明日は日曜日です。

今日の気温は？

今日は、30度です。

今日の気温は、摂氏30度です。

摂氏100度は華氏212度です。

Good morning, ladies and gentlemen.

The captain today is Furuta.

I'm from Narita.

Narita Airport is an international airport.

Departure is at 4:00.

Is it sunny in London?

Is it going to be sunny tomorrow?

It's cold in Canada.

It's hot today.

It's 4:00pm now.

Tomorrow is Sunday.

What's the temperature today?

The temperature is 30 degree today.

Today's temperature is 30 degrees celsius.

100 degrees Celcius is 212 degrees

Fahrenheit.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #5 - Welcome to Japan! Avoid Instant Immersion Shock with this Lesson

皆様、機長の日野でございます。

Mina-sama, kich no Hino de gozaimasu.

"Hello everyone, this is your captain Hino speaking."

In this lesson, you will:

- Learn how to use the copula and become familiar with its different forms
- Learn how to use the particle no (の) to talk about one's title or company they belong to

[Using the Copula](#)

In Japanese, we use the copula in two ways. The meaning we will focus on in this lesson is that of "is," as in "I am," "you are," "he/she/it is," and so on.

In Japanese, there are three different politeness levels, which means there are three different variations of the copula:

Politeness Level	Romaji	Japanese
Informal	da	だ
Formal	desu	です
Extra formal	de gozaimasu	でございます

We use da (だ) in informal situations, while we use desu (です) in formal situations. We reserve de gozaimasu (でございます) for extra formal situations. In the dialogue, we heard the formal desu (です) and extra formal de gozaimasu (でございます). Toyota-san used desu when talking to Ashley and the pilot used de gozaimasu when making his announcement to the passengers.

Examples from the Dialog

Desu (です):

1. 豊田一郎: 摂氏はセルシウスです。
Toyota Ichir : Sesshi wa serushiasu desu.
Ichiro Toyota: "'Sesshi' means Celsius."

De gozaimasu (でございます):

1. パイロット: 皆様、機長の日野でございます。
Pairotto: Mina-sama, kich no Hino de gozaimasu.
Pilot: "Hello everyone, this is your captain Hino speaking."

Using no (の)

Before, we learned how to use no (の) to show possession. Now we will learn how to use it to indicate one's title or the company that they belong to. You can give your title or company name followed by no (の) and then your name.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

[title/company] no [name]

In the example from the dialogue, the pilot introduced himself with his title, kich (機長), the particle no (の), and his name Hino (日野).

1. 機長の日野でございます。
Kich no Hino de gozaimasu.
"This is your captain Hino speaking"

When Peter Galante of JapanesePod101 introduces himself, he could say:

1. (私は) JapanesePod101.comのピーターギャランテです。
(Watashi wa) Japan zu poddo ichi maru ichi dotto komu no P t Gyarante desu.
"I'm Peter Galante of JapanesePod101.com."

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some phrases that are related to dates and time, as well as a counter for temperature:

八月十六日 - hachi-gatsu j -roku-nichi - August 16th
日曜日 - nichiy bi - Sunday
午後三時十分 - gogo san-ji ju-ppun - 3:10 P.M.
30度 - sanj -do - 30 degrees

For more detailed information on these phrases, please check the following Appendix lessons: Time: Hours/Minutes (Appendix #2), Time: Months and Dates (Appendix #3), Days of the Week (Appendix #4), and Counters (Appendix #7).

Cultural Insight

Measurements in Japan

Japan adopted the metric system around the 1960s, which means that meters are used for measuring length, grams are used for measuring weight, liters are used for measuring volume, and so on. In the dialog, we saw that Japan uses the Celsius system of measuring temperature. If you are familiar with the Fahrenheit system, it might take a little while to get



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

used to, but it's a good idea to learn the Celsius system if you want to be able to understand the weather forecast!





Gengo Japanese S1

Don't Miss Your Chance! How to Close the Deal in Japanese

6

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	2
English	3
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	6

Formal Kanji

係員	Foreign passport holders this way.
豊田一郎	あ、じゃあ。
アシュリー	ありがとうございました。 それから、これは私の名刺です。
豊田一郎	ありがとうございます。 へえー、アシュリーさんはネッサン自動車のマネージャーですか。
アシュリー	はい。・・・豊田さん、名刺、ありますか。
豊田一郎	はい、あります。 名刺・・・名刺・・・。あれ？ありません。 すみません。じゃ、(scribbling sound) はい。どうぞ。 僕の、携帯とメアドです。連絡ください。 それでは。
アシュリー	はい。じゃあ、また。

Formal Kana

かかりいん	Foreign passport holders this way.
とよだいちろう	あ、じゃあ。
アシュリー	ありがとうございました。 それから、これはわたしのめいしです。
とよだいちろう	ありがとうございます。 へえー、アシュリーさんはネッサンじどうしゃのマネージャーですか。
アシュリー	はい。・・・とよださん、めいし、ありますか。
とよだいちろう	はい、あります。 めいし・・・めいし・・・。あれ？ありません。 すみません。じゃ、(scribbling sound) はい。どうぞ。 ぼくの、けいたいとメアドです。れんらくください。 それでは。
アシュリー	はい。じゃあ、また。

Formal Romanization



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Kakariin Foreign passport holders this way.
Toyota Ichir A, j .
Ashur Arigat gozaimashita.
Sore kara, kore wa watashi no meishi desu.
Toyota Ichir Arigat gozaimasu.
H , Ashur -san wa Nesson jid sha no man j desu ka.
Ashur Hai... Toyota-san, meishi, arimasu ka.
Toyota Ichir Hai, arimasu.
Meishi... meishi.... Are? Arimasen.
Sumimasen. Ja,(scribbling sound) hai. D zo.
Boku no, keitai to meado desu. Renraku kudasai.
Sore de wa.
Ashur Hai. J , Mata.

English

Clerk Foreign passport holders this way.
Ichiro Toyota All right, well...
Ashley Thank you very much.
Here's my business card.
Ichiro Toyota Thank you!
Oh, so you're a manager at Nesson Automotive?
Ashley Yes...Toyota-san, do you have a business card?
Ichiro Toyota Yes, I do!
Business card...business card...huh? Uh oh, I don't!
I'm sorry. Okay, well...here you are! (scribbling sound)
My cell phone number and e-mail address. Contact me
sometime!
See you around.
Ashley Okay! Bye.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
それから	それから	sore kara	then, and
名刺	めいし	meishi	business card
あれ	あれ	are	Hmm?, Huh?
へえー	へえー	h	oh



自動車	じどうしゃ	jid sha	automobile
マネージャー	マネージャー	man j	manager
携帯	けいたい	keitai	cell phone, mobile phone
メアド	めあど	meado	e-mail address
連絡	れんらく	renraku	contact

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

私は、鈴木です。それから、出身は東京です I'm Suzuki, and I'm from Tokyo.

どうぞ、私の名刺です。 Here is my business card.
あれ？これは私のですか。 Huh, is this mine?
へえー。パイロットですか。 Oh, you're a pilot?
これは、私の自動車です。 This is my car.
マネージャーはどこですか。 Where's the manager.
携帯ありますか。 Do you have a cell phone?
これは、私のメアドです。 This is my e-mail address.
明日、連絡ください。 Please give me a call tomorrow.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #6 - Don't Miss Your Chance! How to Close the Deal in Japanese

豊田さん、名刺、ありますか。

Toyota-san, meishi, arimasu ka.

"Toyota-san, do you have a business card?"

In this lesson, you will learn:

How to talk about the existence of inanimate objects with **arimasu (あります)**

How to ask for something with **kudasai (ください)**

Talking About Existence with arimasu (あります)

Arimasu (あります) is a verb that means "to be," "to exist," or "to have." It is important to note that this only applies to inanimate objects. For animate objects such as people or animals, we use the verb imasu (います). For more information on the differences and usage of these two words, see Lesson 17.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Affirmative	あります arimasu	名刺(が)あります。 Meishi (ga) arimasu.	"I have a business card."
Negative	ありません arimasen	名刺(が)ありません。 Meishi (ga) arimasen.	"I don't have a business card."
Yes/No Question	ありますか arimasu ka	名刺(が)ありますか。 Meishi (ga) arimasu ka?	"Do you have a business card?"

Examples from the Dialogue

1. アシュリー: 豊田さん、名刺、ありますか。
Ashur : Toyota-san, meishi, arimasu ka.
Ashley: "Toyota-san, do you have a business card?"
2. 豊田一郎: はい、あります。名刺・・・名刺・・・。あれ？ありません。
Toyota Ichir : Hai, arimasu. Meishi... Meishi... are? Arimasen.
Ichiro Toyota: "Yes, I do! Business card...business card...huh? Uh oh, I don't!"

Construction

"Excuse me."	"Do you have ___?"	
すみません。 [Sumimasen.]	お砂糖、[o-sat] "sugar"	ありますか。 [arimasu ka?]
	時間 [jikan] "time"	
	ペン [pen] "pen"	

Asking for Something Using kudasai (ください)

In the dialogue, Ichiro asked Ashley to contact him using the word kudasai (ください):

1. 豊田一郎: 連絡ください。
Toyota Ichir : Renraku kudasai.
Ichiro Toyota: "Contact me sometime!"

To ask for something, we can use:

[object] (o) kudasai



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

We put the object particle o (を) plus kudasai (ください) after what we want, but keep in mind that we can omit o (を) particle.

Object You Want	...(o) kudasai
紅茶 [k cha] "black tea"	(を) ください。
電話 [denwa] "call"	
お水 [o-mizu] "water"	
メニュー [meny] "menu"	

Cultural Insight

Business Card Etiquette

Exchanging business cards is a very important practice in the Japanese business world. Unlike in Western countries where business cards might be exchanged at the ending of a meeting to share contact information, in Japan, exchanging business cards is an integral part of the introduction process. If you have your own business card, you should present it to the other person as you introduce yourself. When handing over your business card, it is important to use both hands and hold it so that the writing is readable to the other person. When receiving someone's business card, you should also use both hands to accept it, and whatever you do, don't put it in your pocket! It might be a good idea to follow the other person's lead and put his or her business card away at the same time he or she puts your business card away.





Gengo Japanese S1

Don't Answer this Question Incorrectly!

7

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	2
English	3
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	7

Formal Kanji

係員	次の人。どうぞ。
アシュリー	こんにちは。
係員	こんにちは。パスポート、お願いします。 お仕事ですか。
アシュリー	・・・すみません。もう一度、お願いします。
係員	仕事ですか。Business trip?(ビジネストリップ?)
アシュリー	・・・あ、はい。出張です。
係員	初めてですか。
アシュリー	・・・すみません、ゆっくりお願いします。
係員	日本は初めてですか。First time in Japan? (ファーストタイムインジャパン?)
アシュリー	いいえ、違います。
係員	滞在期間は。
アシュリー	・・・(sigh)すみません。英語でお願いします。

Formal Kana

かかりいん	つぎのひと。どうぞ。
アシュリー	こんにちは。
かかりいん	こんにちは。パスポート、おねがいします。 おしごとですか。
アシュリー	・・・すみません。もういちど、おねがいします。
かかりいん	しごとですか。Business trip?(ビジネストリップ?)
アシュリー	・・・あ、はい。しゅっちょうです。
かかりいん	はじめてですか。
アシュリー	・・・すみません、ゆっくり、おねがいします。
かかりいん	にほんははじめてですか。First time in Japan? (ファーストタイムインジャパン?)
アシュリー	いいえ、ちがいます。
かかりいん	たいざいきかんは。
アシュリー	・・・(sigh)すみません。えいごでおねがいします。

Formal Romanization



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Kakariin Tsugi no hito. D zo.
Ashur Konnichiwa.
Kakariin Konnichiwa. Pasup to, onegai shimasu.
O-shigoto desu ka.
Ashur ... Sumimasen. M ichi-do, onegai shimasu.
Kakariin Shigoto desu ka. Business trip?(Bijinesu torippu?)
Ashur ... A, hai. Shucch desu.
Kakariin Hajimete desu ka.
Ashur ... Sumimasen, yukkuri, onegai shimasu.
Kakariin Nihon wa hajimete desu ka. First time in Japan?(F suto taimu in Japan?)
Ashur lie, chigaimasu.
Kakariin Taizai kikan wa.
Ashur ...(sigh) Sumimasen. Eigo de onegai shimasu.

English

Clerk Next in line, please.
Ashley Hello.
Clerk Hello. Passport, please.
Are you here on business?
Ashley I'm sorry, could you say that once more please?
Clerk Are you here on business? Business trip?
Ashley ...Oh, yes. I'm on a business trip.
Clerk Is it your first time in Japan?
Ashley ...I'm sorry; could you say that a bit slower please?
Clerk Is it your first time in Japan? First time in Japan?
Ashley No, it's not.
Clerk And how long will you be staying?
Ashley ...(sigh) I'm sorry, could you please use English?

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
次	つぎ	tsugi	next
人	ひと	hito	person
パスポート	ぱすぽーと	pasup to	passport
出張	しゅっちょう	shucch	business trip



日本	にほん	Nihon	Japan
滞在期間	たいざいきかん	taizai kikan	length of one's stay
英語	えいご	eigo	English
仕事	しごと	shigoto	work, job
初めて	はじめて	hajimete	for the first time

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

次は私です。	I'm next.
次の人、お願いします。	The next person, please.
パスポート、ありますか。	Do you have a passport?
出張ですか。	Are you here on business?
出身は、日本です。	I'm from Japan.
滞在期間は、1週間です。	I'm going to stay for a week.
英語の地図をください。	Please give me a map in English.
仕事をください。	Please give me a job.
出張は初めてですか。	Is this your first time going on a business trip?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #7 - Don't answer this question incorrectly!

英語でお願いします。

Eigo de onegai shimasu.

"Could you please use English?"

In this lesson, you will:

Review the different usages of onegai shimasu (お願いします)

Learn the word hajimete (初めて) to talk about doing something for the first time

Learn how to use the particle de (で) to talk about the means used to do something

[Review of onegai shimasu \(お願いします\)](#)

We saw many uses of onegai shimasu (お願いします) in the dialogue of this lesson. We first reviewed this phrase in Basic Bootcamp Lesson 3. Let's review some of these expressions that use onegai shimasu (お願いします).

Examples from the Dialogue

When asking for something:

1. パスポート、お願いします。
Pasupo to, onegai shimasu.
"Passport, please."

When asking for something to be repeated:

1. もう一度、お願いします。
Mou ichi-do, onegai shimasu.
"Could you say that once more, please?"

When asking someone to say something slower:

1. ゆっくり、お願いします。
Yukkuri, onegai shimasu.
"Could you say that a bit slower, please?"

Talking About Firsts with hajimete (初めて)

Hajimete (初めて) is an adverb that means, "first" or "first time." When combined with desu ka (ですか), it creates a question that means "Is it/this your first time?" We can put the topic followed by the particle wa (は) in the beginning of the sentence to clarify what is being asked about.

Topic	Topic Particle	First Time	Copula	Question Particle
[Something]	wa は	hajimete 初めて	desu です	ka か

In the dialogue, the clerk at the airport asks Ashley if it's her first time in Japan by using this phrase:

1. 日本は初めてですか。
Nihon wa hajimete desu ka.
"Is it your first time in Japan?"



Other Examples:

1. ニューヨークは初めてですか。
Ny Ū ku wa hajimete desu ka.
"Is it your first time in New York?"
2. 日本茶は初めてですか。
Nihoncha wa hajimete desu ka.
"Is it your first time drinking Japanese tea?"

Particle de (で)

We can use the particle de (で) with a noun to talk about means of transportation or tools used to do something. As we saw in the dialogue, this particle can be used with languages when talking about using them as a tool for communication:

1. 英語でお願いします。
Eigo de onegai shimasu.
"Could you please use English?" (literally, "In English, please.")

In this phrase, eigo de (英語で) means, "in English" or "using English."

Another example:

1. 日本語でお願いします。
Nihongo de onegai shimasu.
"Could you please use Japanese?" (literally, "In Japanese, please.")

Vocabulary Building: Phrases using taizai (滞在)

In this dialogue, Ashley didn't understand the meaning of the word taizai kikan (滞在期間), which means "length of stay." Taizai (滞在) refers to one's stay and is an important word to remember if you plan on visiting Japan. Let's take a look at some common compound words that use taizai (滞在).

Japanese	English	Meaning



滞在期間 taizai kikan	length of stay	期間 = kikan = "length of time"
滞在時間 taizai jikan	length of stay	時間 = jikan = "time"
滞在場所 taizai basho	place where one is staying	場所 = basho = "place"
滞在先 taizai saki	place where one is staying	先 = saki = "destination"
滞在目的 taizai mokuteki	purpose of one's visit	目的 = mokuteki = "purpose"

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we learned the words for English language (eigo, 英語) and Japanese language (Nihon-go, 日本語). For more detailed information on language vocabulary, please check the following Appendix lesson: Country, Nationality, Language (Appendix #11).



Cultural Insight

Immigration and Customs

When you arrive at immigration in Japan, you will probably be asked a few questions about the purpose of your visit and so on. At the larger international airports in Japan, you'll find that a lot of the staff at immigration and customs speak English, and you may not even need to use Japanese. Since you are studying Japanese, though, you might want to try using Japanese. If you get stuck, you can do what Ashley did in the conversation and ask them to use English.



Gengo Japanese S1

Get What You Want Using Japanese!

8

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	9

Formal Kanji

客 係員	羽田空港まで、大人一枚、子供二枚。 4500円です。 はい、チケットです。 出発は3時45分です。 次の人、どうぞ。
アシュリー 係員	品川プリンセスホテルまで。大人一名。 3000円です。
アシュリー 係員	このデビットカード大丈夫ですか。 すみません。そのカードは、駄目です。
アシュリー 係員	このクレジットカードは大丈夫ですか。 はい。大丈夫です。 署名お願いします。
アシュリー 係員	しょめい・・・？ サインお願いします。 Your signature please. (ユア シグニチャー プリーズ)

Formal Kana

きゃく かかりいん	はねだくこうまで、おとないちまい、こどもにまい。 よんせんごひゃくえんです。 はい、チケットです。 しゅっぱつはさんじよんじゅうごふんです。 つぎのひと、どうぞ。
アシュリー かかりいん	しながわプリンセスホテルまで。おとないちめい。 さんぜんえんです。
アシュリー かかりいん	このデビットカードだいじょうぶですか。 すみません。そのカードは、だめです。
アシュリー かかりいん	このクレジットカードはだいじょうぶですか。 はい。だいじょうぶです。 しょめいおねがいします。
アシュリー かかりいん	しょめい・・・？ サインおねがいします。 Your signature please. (ユア シグニチャー プリーズ)

Formal Romanization



Kyaku Kakariin	Haneda k k made, otona ichi-mai, kodomo ni-mai. Yon-sen-go-hyaku-en desu. Hai, chiketto desu. Shuppatsu wa san-ji yonj -go-fun desu. Tsugi no hito, d zo.
Ashur Kakariin	Shinagawa purinsesu hoteru made. Otona ichi-mei. San-zen-en desu.
Ashur Kakariin	Kono debitto k do daij bu desu ka. Sumimasen. Sono k do wa, dame desu.
Ashur Kakariin	Kono kurejitto k do wa daij bu desu ka. Hai. Daij bu desu. Shomei onegai shimasu.
Ashur Kakariin	Shomei...? Sain onegai shimasu. Your signature please.(Yua shigunich pur zu)

English



Customer Clerk	One adult ticket, two child tickets for Haneda Airport. That'll be 4500 yen. Here are the tickets. It departs at three-forty five. Next in line, please.
Ashley Clerk	One adult ticket for Shinagawa Princess Hotel. That'll be 3000 yen.
Ashley Clerk	Can I use this debit card? I'm sorry you can't use that card.
Ashley Clerk	Can I use this credit card? Yes, this one is okay. Your "shomei" please.
Ashley Clerk	"Shomei...?" Your signature please.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
-------	------	--------	---------

羽田空港	はねだくうこう	Haneda k k	Haneda airport
大人	おとな	otona	adult
一枚	いちまい	ichi-mai	one sheet of paper
子供	こども	kodomo	child, children
円	えん	en	yen
品川	しながわ	Shinagawa	Shinagawa (area of Tokyo)
ホテル	ホテル	hoteru	hotel
一名	いちめい	ichi-mei	one (person)
カード	カード	k do	card
駄目	だめ	dame	No, bad
クレジットカード	クレジットカード	kurejitto k do	credit card
署名	しょめい	shomei	signature
サイン	サイン	sain	signature, autograph

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

羽田空港はどこですか。	Where is Haneda airport?
大人一枚、おねがいします。	One adult ticket, please.
大人のチケット一枚ください。	One adult ticket, please.
これは、私の子供です。	This is my child.
1ドルは、何円ですか。	How much yen is it to one dollar?
品川まで、お願いします。	To Shinagawa, please.
横浜ホテルまで、お願いします。	To Yokohama Hotel, please. (To a taxi driver)
大人二名、子供一名。	Two adults and one child.
カードは大丈夫ですか。	Is it okay to pay by credit card?
子供は、駄目です。	Children are not allowed.
これは、私のクレジットカードです。	This is my credit card.
署名お願いします。	Your signature please.
サインください。	Can I have your autograph?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #8 - Get What You Want Using Japanese!

このクレジットカードは大丈夫ですか。

Kono kurejitto k do wa daij bu desu ka.

"Can I use this credit card?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn useful vocabulary for buying tickets

Learn how to use the word *daij bu* (大丈夫)

Learn a series of important words known as *ko-so-a-do* words

Buying Tickets

In the dialogue, Ashley successfully bought tickets for the Limousine Bus from Narita Airport to Shinagawa Princess Hotel. Let's take a look at some vocabulary and phrases used when buying tickets.

The first two vocabulary words are known as counters. Japanese has many counters, which are words that we use to count specific items. The corresponding counter depends on the appearance or make up of the item. For example, there are different counters for sheets of paper and bottles because they are different in shape. Counters always come after the number, which comes after the object being counted.

Counters for Paper:

Japanese	Meaning
~ 枚 ~ mai	counter for sheets of paper (including tickets)

Mai (枚) is a counter that we use to count sheets of paper, which includes tickets.

Japanese	Romaji	English
一枚	ichi-mai	one sheet of paper
二枚	ni-mai	two sheets of paper
三枚	san-mai	three sheets of paper
四枚	yon-mai	four sheets of paper

Counters for People:

Japanese	Meaning
~ 名 ~ mei	counter for people

Mei (名) is a counter that we use to count people. We usually use this counter for people in



polite situations.

Japanese	Romaji	English
一名	ichi-mei	one person
二名	ni-mei	two people
三名	san-mei	three people
四名	yon-mei	four people

Made ("for (place)")

Japanese	Meaning
~まで ~ made	for (place)/ until

Made (まで) literally means "until," but in this case it is commonly translated as "for (place)."

Examples:

1. 成田空港まで
Narita k k made
"for Narita Airport"
2. 東京駅まで
T ky eki made
"for Tokyo Station"

Japanese	Meaning
大人 otona	adult
子供 kodomo	child

Examples:

1. 大人一枚
otona ichi-mai
"one adult ticket"
2. 子供二枚
kodomo ni-mai
"two child tickets"



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Using Daij bu (大丈夫) and Dame (だめ)

Daij bu and dame are two common and useful words that you will encounter a lot in Japanese. Daij bu (大丈夫) means "okay" or "all right," while dame (だめ) has the opposite meaning and means "no good," "not okay," and "useless." These can refer to states ("I'm okay," "I'm not okay") or actions ("It's okay to _____," "It's not okay to _____").

To say that something is okay or not okay (depending on the context, this can mean a variety of things), we use:

Topic	Topic Particle	"okay" / "not okay"	Copula
[something]	は wa	大丈夫 / だめ daij bu / dame	です desu

To ask whether something is okay or not, we simply add the question particle ka (か):

Topic	Topic Particle	"okay" / "not okay"	Copula	Question Particle
[something]	は wa	大丈夫 / だめ daij bu / dame	です desu	か ka

Let's look at this exchange from the dialogue:

1. アシュリー: このデビットカード大丈夫ですか。
Ashur: Kono debitto k do wa daij bu desu ka?
Ashley: "Can I use this debit card?" (literally, "Is this debit card okay?")
2. 係員: すみません。そのカードは、駄目です。
Kakariin: Sumimasen. Sono k do wa, dame desu.
Clerk: "I'm sorry; you can't use that credit card." (literally, "I'm sorry, that card is no good.")

Ko-so-a-do (こそあど) Words

In Lesson #3, we touched briefly on Ko-so-a-do words, which are also known as demonstrative words. These are words that show what you are talking about. In Japanese, there are three main categories ("this," "that," and "that over there") and one category for questions. Let's review these categories and take a look at a new set of Ko-so-a-do words.

The prefix tells us a location:



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Prefix	Location
こ ko	here, near
そ so	there, not far off
あ a	there, at a distance
ど do	(not location but question marker)

Examples:

Japanese	English
これ kore	this
それ sore	that
あれ are	that (over there)
どれ dore	which

Examples:

1. これは日本茶です。
Kore wa Nihoncha desu.
"This is Japanese tea."
2. それは紅茶です。
Sore wa k cha desu.
"That's black tea."

The following words also mean "this" and "that" but must be followed by a noun.

Japanese	English
この (noun) kono (noun)	this (noun)
その (noun) sono (noun)	that (noun)



あの (noun) ano (noun)	that (noun) over there
どの (noun) dono (noun)	which (noun)

Examples:

1. このコーヒーは熱いです。
Kono koh wa atsui desu.
"This coffee is hot."
2. そのカードはだめです。
Sono k do wa dame desu.
"You can't use that card."

[In the Appendix](#)

In this lesson, we introduced the counter words for flat objects (mai, 枚), and people (mei, 名). For more detailed information on these and other counters, please check the following Appendix lesson: Counters (Appendix #7).



Cultural Insight

Using Money in Japan

The monetary unit for Japan is yen, known as en (円) in Japanese. Throughout Japan you will see both the international symbol for yen (¥) as well as the kanji for en (円). Japanese coins come in denominations of 1 yen, 5 yen, 10 yen, 50 yen, 100 yen, and 500 yen. Paper bills come in denominations of 1,000 yen, 5,000 yen, and 10,000 yen (2,000 yen bills are rare but do exist). Japan is still very much a cash-based society, which means you will not be able to use your credit card everywhere, and there will be even fewer places that will take a debit card. In major stores you shouldn't have any problem using a credit card, but make sure that you always have cash on hand just in case. Don't hesitate to ask if you can use a credit or debit card using the phrases from this lesson!



Gengo Japanese S1

Your One Stop Shop for All Your Japanese Needs

9

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	2
English	3
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	8

Formal Kanji

店員 いらっしゃいませ。
アシュリー このサンドイッチ一つと、このクッキーを二つください。
...すみません、これは、何ですか？
店員 それは、『てんむす』です。おいしいですよ。
てんぷらとおむすびです。
アシュリー じゃ、それを二個、ください。
店員 サンドイッチ一つ、クッキー二つ、てんむす二つ...
お会計、890円です。
アシュリー え？すみません。いくらですか。
店員 890円です。
アシュリー はっぴゃく、きゅうじゅう円... じゃ、はい、千円。
店員 おつり、110円です。
ありがとうございました。

Formal Kana

てんいん いらっしゃいませ。
アシュリー このサンドイッチひとつと、このクッキーをふたつください。
...すみません、これは、なんですか？
てんいん それは、『てんむす』です。おいしいですよ。
てんぷらとおむすびです。
アシュリー じゃ、それをにこ、ください。
てんいん サンドイッチひとつ、クッキーふたつ、てんむすふたつ...
おかいけい、はっぴゃくきゅうじゅうえんです。
アシュリー え？すみません。いくらですか。
てんいん はっぴゃくきゅうじゅうえんです。
アシュリー はっぴゃく、きゅうじゅうえん... じゃ、はい、せんえん。
てんいん おつり、ひゃくじゅうえんです。
ありがとうございました。

Formal Romanization

Ten'in Irasshaimase.
Ashur Kono sandoicchi hitotsu to, kono kukk o futatsu kudasai.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Ten'in ... Sumimasen, kore wa, nan desu ka?
Sore wa, "Tenmusu" desu. Oishii desu yo.
Tempura to o-musubi desu.

Ashur Ja, sore o ni-ko, kudasai.
Ten'in Sandoicchi hitotsu, kukk futatsu, tenmusu futatsu...
o-kaikai, ha-ppyaku-ky -j -en desu.

Ashur E? Sumimasen. Ikura desu ka.
Ten'in Ha-ppyaku-ky -j -en desu.
Ashur Ha-ppyaku, ky -j -en... Ja, hai, sen-en.
Ten'in O-tsure, hyaku-j -en desu.
Arigat gozaimashita.

English

Clerk Welcome.
Ashley I'd like one of these sandwiches and two cookies, please.
Excuse me, what is this?
Clerk That's "tenmusu." It's really good!
It's tempura and musubi.
Ashley Okay, I'll take two of those...
Clerk One sandwich, two cookies, and two tenmusu...
your total is 890 yen.
Ashley Huh? I'm sorry, how much is it?
Clerk 890 yen.
Ashley Eight-hundred ninety yen...okay, here's 1000 yen.
Clerk Your change is 110 yen.
Thank you!

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
おいしい	おいしい	oishii	delicious
いくら	いくら	ikura	how much
おつり	おつり	o-tsure	change
サンドイッチ	サンドイッチ	sandoicchi	sandwich
クッキー	クッキー	kukk	cookie
てんむす	てんむす	tenmusu	rice ball with tempura
おむすび	おむすび	omusubi	rice ball



てんぷら	てんぷら	tempura	tempura, Japanese deep-fried food
二個	にこ	ni-ko	two (small objects)
会計	かいけい	kaikai	check, bill
何	なに、なん	nani, nan	what

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

イギリスのクッキーはおいしい。 おつりはいくらですか。 おつり、ありますか。 サンドイッチありますか。 クッキー8個ください。 おむすび一個、いくらですか。 てんぷらは日本の料理です。 これを二個ください。 会計、おねがいします。 ラッシーは何ですか。	British cookies are delicious. How much is the change? Do you have change? Are there sandwiches? Eight cookies, please. How much does one rice ball cost? Tempura is a Japanese dish. Two of these, please. Check, please. What's lassie?
---	--

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #9 - Your one stop shop for all your Japanese needs

すみません。いくらですか。

Sumimasen. Ikura desu ka.

"I'm sorry, how much is it?"

In this lesson, you will:

Review some crucial questions words ("what" and "how much")

Learn some useful expressions for buying something

Review of Question Words

In the dialogue, we saw two vital question words: nan (何), meaning "what," and ikura (いくら), meaning "how much."

1. アシュリー: これは、何ですか？



- Ashuri: Kore wa, nan desu ka?
Ashley: "What is this?"
- アシュリー: いくらですか。
Ashuri: Ikura desu ka.
Ashley: "How much is it?"

Asking What Something is:

Item Being Asked About	Topic Particle	What	Copula	Question Particle	Translation
[A]	は wa	何 nan	です desu	か ka	"What is [A]?"

If the topic is already understood, we can shorten this question to: 何ですか？ (Nan desu ka?)

Asking How Much Something Costs:

Item Being Asked About	Topic Particle	How Much	Copula	Question Particle	Translation
[A]	は wa	いくら ikura	です desu	か ka	"How much is [A]?"

If the topic is already understood, we can shorten this question to: いくらですか？ (Ikura desu ka?)

Useful Expressions for Buying Something

In the dialogue, Ashley bought lunch at a kiosk, specifying how much of each item she wanted. We'll go over some important expressions used for buying something, such as counters to specify the number of items you want.

Counters

Japanese has many different kinds of counters, words that we use to count objects according to size and shape. Here we'll introduce you to two counters commonly encountered in Japanese.

Counters for General Objects

Japanese	Romaji	English
----------	--------	---------



一つ	hitotsu	"one (object)"
二つ	futatsu	"two (objects)"
三つ	mittsu	"three (objects)"
四つ	yottsu	"four (objects)"
五つ	itsutsu	"five (objects)"
六つ	muttsu	"six (objects)"
七つ	nanatsu	"seven (objects)"
八つ	yattsu	"eight (objects)"
九つ	kokonotsu	"nine (objects)"
十	t	"ten (objects)"
いくつ	ikutsu	"how many (objects)?"

Counter for Small Objects

Japanese	Romaji	English
一個	i-kko	"one (small object)"
二個	ni-ko	"two (small objects)"
三個	san-ko	"three (small objects)"
四個	yon-ko	"four (small objects)"
五個	go-ko	"five (small objects)"
六個	ro-kko	"six (small objects)"
七個	nana-ko	"seven (small objects)"
八個	hachi-ko	"eight (small objects)"
九個	ky -ko	"nine (small objects)"
十個	j -kko	ten (small objects)
何個	nan-ko	"how many (small objects)?"

Asking for Something

Item Wanted	Object Particle	"give me" / "please"	Translation
[A]	を	ください	"I'll take [A]" / "Please give me [A]"
おむすび o-musubi	o	kudasai	
クッキー kukk			



これ kore			
------------	--	--	--

Item	Object Particle	Amount	"give me" / "please"	Translation
おむすび o-musubi	を o	ひとつ hitotsu	ください kudasai	"I'll take [amount] [item]" / "Please give me [amount] [item]"
クッキー kukk		ふたつ futatsu		
これ kore		みっつ mittsu		

Examples from the Dialogue

1. アシュリー: このサンドイッチ一つと、このクッキーを二つください。
Ashur : Kono sandoicchi hitotsu to, kono kukki o futatsu kudasai.
Ashley: "I'd like one of these sandwiches and two cookies, please."
2. アシュリー: じゃ、それを二個、ください。
Ashur : Ja, sore o ni-ko, kudasai.
Ashley: "Okay, I'll take two of those."

Vocabulary Usage: Welcome!/May I Help You?

いらっしゃいませ。[Irasshaimase.] "Welcome!/May I help you?" - This is an honorific phrase used by shop clerks and restaurant staff to greet customers. It usually simply means "welcome!", but when the clerk comes up to you to see how they can help you it is the equivalent of "(How) may I help you?" in English.

Review of Question Words

In this lesson, we introduced a couple of counter words used to count different items. For more detailed information on counters, please check the following Appendix lesson: Counter (Appendix #7).

Cultural Insight



Regional Foods in Japan

In the lesson, we introduced tenmusu as a regional food that originated from the Chūkyū area (Nagoya and the surrounding areas). There are many varieties of famous regional foods throughout Japan. Okonomiyaki (a flat pancake with meat and vegetables inside) from Osaka and Hiroshima, unagi ("eel") from Hamamatsu, and gyoza ("dumplings") from Utsunomiya are just a few examples of regional cuisine. If you get the chance to travel throughout Japan, try some of the local cuisine that is famous in the area. If you are not sure about what some kind of food is, you can use the phrase that we saw in this lesson, Kore wa nan desu ka? ("What is this?")



Gengo Japanese S1

Enjoy a Smooth Check-in at Your Hotel in Japan

10

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	8

Formal Kanji

受付	いらっしゃいませ。ご予約のお名前は。
アシユリー	アシユリーです。
受付	アシユリー・ジョーンズ様ですね。
アシユリー	はい、そうです。
受付	一名様、禁煙のお部屋、 今日から8月31日までですね。
アシユリー	はい、そうです。
受付	じゃ、ご署名をお願いします。 ジョーンズ様のお部屋は807(はちぜろなな)号室でございます。
	こちら、お部屋のカードキーでございます。
	それから、こちら、朝食券でございます。
アシユリー	ちょう・・・しょくけん。ちょうしょくけんは何ですか。
受付	朝食は朝ごはんです。ブレックファーストです。 券は、チケットです。 朝食券はブレックファーストのチケットです。
アシユリー	あー。はい。朝ごはんは何時からですか。
受付	朝食は六時半から九時まででございます。

Formal Kana

うけつけ	いらっしゃいませ。ごよやくのおなまえは。
アシユリー	アシユリーです。
うけつけ	アシユリー・ジョーンズさまですね。
アシユリー	はい、そうです。
うけつけ	いちめいさま、きんえんのおへや、 きょうからはちがつさんじゅういちにちまでですね。
アシユリー	はい、そうです。
うけつけ	じゃ、ごしょめいをおねがいします。 ジョーンズさまのおへやは807(はちぜろなな)ごうしつでございます。
	こちら、おへやのカードキーでございます。
	それから、こちら、ちょうしょくけんでございます。
アシユリー	ちょう・・・しょくけん。ちょうしょくけんはなんですか。
うけつけ	ちょうしょくはあさごはんです。ブレックファーストです。 けんは、チケットです。

アシュリー
うけつけ

ちょうしょくけんはブレックファーストのチケットです。
あー。はい。あさごはんはなんじからですか。
ちょうしょくはろくじはんからくじまででございます。

Formal Romanization

Uketsuke	Irasshaimase. Go-yoyaku no o-namae wa.
Ashur	Ashur desu.
Uketsuke	Ashur . J nzu-sama desu ne.
Ashur	Hai, s desu.
Uketsuke	Ichi-mei-sama, Kin'en no o-heya, ky kara hachi-gatsu san-j -ichi-nichi made desu ne.
Ashur	Hai, s desu.
Uketsuke	Ja, go-shomei o onegai shimasu. J nzu-sama no o-heya wa 807(hachi zero nana)-g -shitsu de gozaimasu. Kochira, o-heya no k do k de gozaimasu. Sore kara, kochira, ch shoku ken de gozaimasu.
Ashur	Ch ... shokuken. Ch shoku ken wa nan desu ka.
Uketsuke	Ch shoku wa asa go-han desu. Burekkuf suto desu. Ken wa, chiketto desu. Ch shoku ken wa burekkuf suto no chiketto desu.
Ashur	. Hai. Asa go-han wa nan-ji kara desu ka.
Uketsuke	Ch shoku wa roku-ji-han kara ku-ji made de gozaimasu.

English

Receptionist	Welcome! What name is your reservation under?
Ashley	Ashley.
Receptionist	Ms. Ashley Jones, is that right?
Ashley	Yes, that's right.
Receptionist	A non-smoking room for one, from today until August 31, is that correct?
Ashley	Yes, that's right.
Receptionist	Your signature please. Your room number is 807. Here is the key card to your room.

Ashley: And here are your "choshokuken."
 Receptionist: "Ch ...shokuken." What is a "ch shokuken?"
 Receptionist: "Ch shoku" is breakfast. It's "breakfast."
 Receptionist: "Ken" is a ticket.
 Receptionist: "Ch shoken" are breakfast tickets.
 Ashley: Ohh, okay. What time is breakfast?
 Receptionist: Breakfast is from six thirty to nine.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
予約	よやく	yoyaku	reservation
様	さま	sama	Mr., Mrs.
禁煙	きんえん	kin'en	no smoking
部屋	へや	heya	room
~号室	~ごうしつ	g -shitsu	room number ~
カードキー	カードキー	k do k	key card
朝ごはん	あさごはん	asa go-han	breakfast
何時	なんじ	nan-ji	what time
六時半	ろくじはん	roku-ji han	six thirty, half past six
朝食	ちょうしょく	ch shoku	breakfast
券	けん	ken	ticket

4

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

予約はありますか。
 皆様、おはようございます。
 ここは禁煙です。
 部屋はどこですか。
 私の部屋は501号室です。
 カードキーをください。
 朝ごはんは何時までですか。
 今何時ですか。
 今、六時半です。
 朝食は、何時ですか。
 クーポン券、あります。

Do you have a reservation?
 Good morning, ladies and gentlemen.
 This place is no smoking.
 Where is the room?
 My room is Room 501.
 Please give me a key card.
 What time does breakfast end?
 What time is it now?
 It's half past six now.
 What time is breakfast?
 I have a coupon.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #10 - Enjoy a Smooth Check-in at Your Hotel in Japan

こちらは、お部屋のカードキーでございます。

Kochira wa, o-heya no k do k de gozaimasu.

"Here is the key card to your room."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to use the sentence-ending particle **ne** (ね) to elicit agreement or confirm something

Learn how to use **kara** (から) and **made** (まで) to create "from [A] to [B]" sentences

Learn about the honorific prefixes **o-** (お) and **go-** (ご)

Learn some more **ko-so-a-do** words

Sentence-ending Particle **ne** (ね)

Ne (ね) is a sentence-ending particle that indicates that the speaker wants the listener to agree with or confirm what they have said. When used to elicit agreement, it is very similar to English tag questions such as "isn't it?" or "aren't you?"

Let's look at these examples from the conversation:

1. 受付: アシュリー・ジョーンズ様ですね。

Uketsuke: Ashur J nzu-sama desu ne.

Receptionist: "Ashley Jones, is that right?"

2. 受付: 一名様、禁煙のお部屋、今日から8月31日までですね。

Uketsuke: Ichi-meï-sama, kin'en no o-heya, ky kara hachi-gatsu san-j -ichi-nichi made desu ne.

Receptionist: "A non-smoking room for one, from today until August 31, is that correct?"

In both examples, the receptionist is confirming the information that she has on file for Ashley by using the particle **ne** (ね).

Compare these examples:

	Example without ne	Example with ne
Japanese	アシュリーさんの出身はニューヨークです。	アシュリーさんの出身はニューヨークですね。
Romaji	Ashur -san no shusshin wa	Ashur -san no shusshin wa



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

	Ny Y ku desu.	Ny Y ku desu ne.
"English"	"Ashley is from New York."	"Ashley is from New York, right?"

	Example without ne	Example with ne
Japanese	今日は寒いです。	今日は寒いですね。
Romaji	Ky wa samui desu.	Ky wa samui desu ne.
"English"	"It's cold today."	"It's cold today, isn't it?"

From [A] to [B]

In Lesson #8, we learned the word made (まで), which means "until." In this lesson, we'll learn the word kara (から), which means "from," which we can combine with made (まで) to create a "from [A] until [B]" sentence. Please note that the word order is different from English:

For Example:

1. 2:00 kara (から) = "from 2:00"
2. 6:00 made (まで) = "until 6:00"

[A] から [B] まで	From [A] until [B]
[A] kara [B] made	

We can use this construction to talk about places ("from Tokyo to Osaka"), time ("from 8:00 to 12:00"), and dates, as seen in this example from the dialogue:

1. 今日から8月31日まで
Ky kara hachi-gatsu san-j -ichi-nichi made
"From today until August 31."

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Other Examples:

1. 空港からホテルまで
K k kara hoteru made
"From the airport to the hotel."
2. 2時から6時まで
Ni-ji kara roku-ji made
"From 2:00 to 6:00."

Honorific Prefixes o- (お) and go- (ご)

O- (お) and go- (ご) are prefixes we attach to the beginning of some words to show respect or politeness. It is said that o- (お) precedes words of Japanese origin or words we commonly use in daily life, whereas go- (ご) precedes words of Chinese origin, but this rule has many exceptions.

Examples:

yoyaku ("reservation")	予約 (yoyaku) becomes ご予約 (go-yoyaku)
heya ("room")	部屋 (heya) becomes お部屋 (o-heya)
shomei ("signature")	署名 (shomei) becomes ご署名 (go-shomei)

1. 受付: いらっしゃいませ。ご予約のお名前は。
Uketsuke: Irasshaimase. Go-yoyaku no o-namae wa?
Receptionist: "Welcome! What name is your reservation under?"

Ko-so-a-do Words Revisited

In Lessons #3 and #8, we looked at Ko-so-a-do words, which are demonstrative words that show what you are talking about. This time we will take a look at Ko-so-a-do words used to politely refer to things, people, and directions. We also use these words to refer to directions.

Japanese	Romaji	English
こちら	kochira	"this, this person, this way"
そちら	sochira	"that, that person, that way"
あちら	achira	"that, that person, that way (over there)"
どちら	dochira	"which?" / "which person" / "(who)?" / "which way?"



1. 受付: こちら(は)、お部屋のカードキーでございます。
Uketsuke: Kochira (wa), o-heya no k do k de gozaimasu.
Receptionist: "Here is the key card to your room."

In the above sentence, the receptionist is using ultra-polite speech. Here's how the words changed to become ultra-polite:

1. これ (kore) こちら (kochira)
2. 部屋 (heya) お部屋 (o-heya)
3. です (desu) でございます (de gozaimasu)

To say the same thing in regular polite speech, we would say:

1. これは、部屋のカードキーです。
Kore wa, heya no k do k desu.

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we introduced some more Ko-so-a-do words, which we looked at in Lessons #3 and #8. For more detailed information on Ko-so-a-do words, please check the following Appendix lesson: Ko-so-a-do Words (Appendix #9).

Cultural Insight

Rice = Meal?

The word go-han (ごはん) literally means "cooked rice," but has come to mean "meal" in general in Japanese. This is because rice is considered the main staple food in Japan and is eaten with almost every meal. The word go-han is combined with the different times of day to create the names of daily meals:

Time of Day	Meal	Japanese	"English"
朝 asa	ごはん go-han	朝ごはん asa go-han	"breakfast"
昼 hiru	ごはん go-han	昼ごはん hiru go-han	"lunch"



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

晩 ban	ごはん go-han	晩ごはん ban go-han	"dinner"
----------	---------------	--------------------	----------





Gengo Japanese S1

Everything You Need to Know about Climate and Weather in Japan

11

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	8

Formal Kanji

Alarm clock sound	ピピピ ロクジデス ピピピ ロクジデス
アシュリー テレビ	(yawns) (turns on TV) 今日の天気です。 東京 雨 時々 くもり。 横浜、雨 のち 晴れ、千葉...
アシュリー	あめ ときどき くもり...
- - - Elevator hall	
スタッフ 1	おはようございます。何階ですか。
アシュリー	一階、お願いします。
スタッフ 1	かしこまりました。
- - - Lobby	
スタッフ 2	おはようございます。
アシュリー	すみません。タクシー乗り場はどこですか。
スタッフ 2	こちらです。どうぞ。
アシュリー	ありがとうございます。
スタッフ 2	傘はありますか。
アシュリー	傘？
スタッフ 2	いいえ。ありません。 では、これ、どうぞ。 いってらっしゃいませ。

Formal Kana

Alarm clock sound	ピピピ ロクジデス ピピピ ロクジデス
アシュリー テレビ	(yawns) (turns on TV) きょうのてんきです。 とうきょう あめ ときどき くもり。 よこはま、あめ のち はれ、ちば...
アシュリー	あめ ときどき くもり...
- - - Elevator hall	
スタッフ 1	おはようございます。なんかいですか。
アシュリー	いっかい、おねがいします。
スタッフ 1	かしこまりました。
- - - Lobby	

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

スタッフ 2	おはようございます。
アシュリー	すみません。タクシーのりばはどこですか。
スタッフ 2	こちらです。どうぞ。
アシュリー	ありがとうございます。
スタッフ 2	かさはありますか。
アシュリー	かさ？
	いいえ。ありません。
スタッフ 2	では、これ、どうぞ。
	いってらっしゃいませ。

Formal Romanization

Alarm clock sound	Pipipi roku-ji desu pipipi roku-ji desu
ashur	(yawns)(turns on TV)
terebi	Ky no tenki desu. T ky ame tokidoki kumori. Yokohama, ame nochi hare, Chiba...
Ashur	Ame tokidoki kumori...
- - - Elevator hall	
Sutaffu 1	Ohay gozaimasu. Nan-kai desu ka.
Ashur	I-kkai, onegai shimasu.
Sutaffu 1	Kashikomarimashita.
- - - Lobby	
Sutaffu 2	Ohay gozaimasu.
ashur	Sumimasen. Takush noriba wa doko desu ka.
Sutaffu 2	Kochira desu. D zo.
ashur	Arigat gozaimasu.
Sutaffu 2	Kasa wa arimasu ka.
ashur	Kasa? lie. Arimasen.
Sutaffu 2	Dewa, kore, d zo. Itterasshai mase.

English

Alarm clock	(beep-beep-beep) It's six o'clock! (beep-beep-beep) It's six
-------------	--

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

sound o'clock!
Ashley (yawns and turns on TV)
TV And now for today's weather.
In Tokyo, showers and occasionally cloudy.
In Yokohama, showers in the morning and then it will clear up. In Chiba...
Ashley Showers and...occasionally cloudy...
- - - Elevator hall
Hotel staff Good morning. Which floor?
Ashley First floor, please.
Hotel staff Certainly.
- - - Lobby
Hotel staff #2 Good morning.
Ashley Excuse me, where can I catch a taxi?
Hotel staff #2 Right over here.
Ashley Thank you.
Hotel staff #2 Do you have an umbrella?
Ashley Umbrella?
No, I don't.
Hotel staff #2 Okay, here you are.
Have a nice day.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
雨	あめ	ame	rain
時々	ときどき	tokidoki	sometimes
くもり	くもり	kumori	cloudy
横浜	よこはま	Yokohama	Yokohama
千葉	ちば	Chiba	Chiba
何階	なんかい	nan-kai	which floor
タクシー乗り場	タクシーのりば	takush noriba	taxi stand, taxi terminal
傘	かさ	kasa	umbrella
のち	のち	nochi	after
一階	いっかい	i-kkai	first floor
では	では	dewa	well, well then, okay

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

今日は雨です。
明日は、晴れ時々くもりです。

今日は、くもりです。
横浜ホテルまで、お願いします。
私の出身は千葉です。
あなたの部屋は何階ですか。
すみません。タクシー乗り場は...。
あの傘をください。
今日の天気は、晴れのち雨です。
一階はロビーです。
では、また。

Today is rainy.
Tomorrow it will be sunny, and occasionally cloudy.
It's cloudy today.
To Yokohama Hotel, please. (To a taxi driver)
I'm from Chiba.
Which floor is your room?
Excuse me. Where's the taxi stand?
Please give me that umbrella.
Today will be sunny and then will rain.
The lobby is on the first floor.
Well then, see you again.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #11 - Everything You Need to Know about Climate and Weather in Japan

東京 雨 時々 くもり。

T ky ame tokidoki kumori.

"In Tokyo, showers and occasionally cloudy."

In this lesson, you will:

- Learn how to ask where something is using **doko** (どこ)
- Learn useful weather-related vocabulary
- Learn some useful set phrases

Asking Location

Being able to ask the location of something is very important! In the dialogue, Ashley asked where she could catch a taxi. Let's look at this sentence:

Place/Item Being Asked About	Topic Particle	Where	Copula	Question Particle
タクシー乗り場 Takush noriba	は wa	どこ doko	です desu	か。 ka

Here is the construction:



[Place] wa doko desu ka?

More Examples:

1. トイレはどこですか。
Toire wa doko desu ka.
"Where is the bathroom?"
2. 駅はどこですか。
Eki wa doko desu ka.
"Where is the station?"

豊田さんの出身はどこですか。 from dialogue in Lesson 3
Toyota-san no shusshin wa doko desu ka.
"Where is Toyota-san from?" (literally, "Where is Toyota-san's hometown?")

[Weather-Related Vocabulary](#)

In the dialogue, we heard some examples of weather-related vocabulary from the weather report on TV. Let's take a look at some commonly used vocabulary related to the weather.

晴れ hare	"sunny"
くもり kumori	"cloudy"
雨 ame	"rain"
雷 kaminari	"thunderstorms," "lightning"
ときどき tokidoki	"sometimes," "on-and-off"
のち nochi	"after"

Examples:

1. 雨のち晴
Ame nochi hare



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

- "Rain, then sunny later"
- 晴ときどきくもり
Hare tokidoki kumori
"Sunny, occasionally cloudy"

Set Expressions

In the dialogue, we heard a couple of useful set phrases. Let's take a closer look at them as well as some other related expressions:

Phrase	More Polite Phrase	Meaning
わかりました Wakarimashita	かしこまりました Kashikomarimashita	These phrases mean "okay," with the meaning of "I understand" or "I see." Kashikomarimashita is a formal version used mostly by people who are addressing their customers.
いってらっしゃい Itte rasshai	いってらっしゃいませ Itte rasshaimase	These phrases literally mean, "go and come back." We say them to someone who is leaving a certain place but is expected to return in the future.
いってきます Itte kimasu	いってまいります Itte mairimasu	We say these phrases in response to itte rasshai. They roughly mean the same thing as "I'll be back" in English.
ただいま Tadaima	ただいまかえりました Tadaima kaerimashita	These phrases literally mean "I have just returned now" and we say them when we have just returned home/somewhere.
おかえりなさい Okaeri nasai	おかえりなさいませ Okaeri nasaimase	We say these phrases in response to tadaima. They mean "welcome back" or "welcome home."

Note that we reserve the more polite phrases for very formal situations. The phrases on the left are polite enough for most situations.



Vocabulary Usage

In this dialog, we saw the phrase *ohay gozaimasu* (おはようございます), which means "good morning". Let's look at some other phrases used as greetings throughout the day.

おはようございます	ohay gozaimasu	"Good morning."
こんにちは	kon'nichi wa	"Hello." (can be used at any time during the day)
こんばんは	konbanwa	"Good evening."

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw a counter used to count floors of a building, *kai* (階). For more detailed information on this and other counters, please check the following Appendix lesson: Counters (Appendix #7).

Cultural Insight

Umbrellas All Year Round

Rain falls throughout the year in Japan, with June and early July considered the main rainy season. During this time, you will see many people with umbrellas, known as *kasa* (傘) in Japanese, even if the rain is only sprinkling outside. Umbrellas come in all shapes and sizes, and you can purchase a cheap vinyl umbrella for as low as 100 yen, which is perfect for when you are stranded in the rain without an umbrella. Parasols meant for protection from the sun are called *higasa* (日傘) and are used by some in the sunny spring and summer weather.





Gengo Japanese S1

Get Insider Information from the Locals

12

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	4
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	8

Formal Kanji

運転手	どちらまで。
アシュリー	ネッサン自動車まで。
運転手	え？どこまでですか？
アシュリー	日本橋のネッサン自動車まで。
運転手	うーん。住所、わかりますか。
アシュリー	はい、わかります。これです。
運転手	ああ、はい。わかりました。
(Starts driving)	
運転手	お客さん、日本語、わかりますか。
アシュリー	はい、ちょっと。
運転手	日本語、上手ですね。
アシュリー	運転手さんも、上手ですね。
運転手	日本橋に、いいてんぷら屋がありますよ。
アシュリー	本当ですか。名前、わかりますか。
運転手	あー、ちょっと・・・わかりません。すみません。
(Taxi stops)	
運転手	3320円です。
アシュリー	はい。それから、領収書ください。
運転手	はい、お釣りと領収書。
	それから、はい、これ、地図です。
	これ、駅。これ、てんぷら屋。
	わかります？オッケイ？
アシュリー	はい。オッケイです。
	ありがとうございました。

Formal Kana

うんてんしゅ	どちらまで。
アシュリー	ネッサンじどうしゃまで。
うんてんしゅ	え？どこまでですか？
アシュリー	にほんばしのネッサンじどうしゃまで。
うんてんしゅ	うーん。じゅうしょ、わかりますか。
アシュリー	はい、わかります。これです。
うんてんしゅ	ああ、はい。わかりました。
(Starts driving)	
うんてんしゅ	おきゃくさん、にほんご、わかりますか。

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

アシユリー はい、ちょっと。
うんてんしゆ にほんご、じょうずですね。
アシユリー うんてんしゆさんも、じょうずですね。
うんてんしゆ にほんばしに、いいてんぷらやがありますよ。
アシユリー ほんとうですか。なまえ、わかりますか。
うんてんしゆ あー、ちょっと・・・わかりません。すみません。
(Taxi stops)
うんてんしゆ さんぜんさんびやくにじゅうえんです。
アシユリー はい。それから、りょうしゅうしよください。
うんてんしゆ はい、おつりとりょうしゅうしよ。
 それから、はい、これ、ちずです。
 これ、えき。これ、てんぷらや。
 わかります？オッケイ？
アシユリー はい。オッケイです。
 ありがとうございました。

Formal Romanization

Untenshu Dochira made.
Ashur Nessian jid sha made.
Untenshu E? Doko made desu ka?
Ashur Nihonbashi no Nessian jid sha made.
Untenshu n. J sho, wakarimasu ka.
Ashur Hai, wakarimasu. Kore desu.
Untenshu , hai. Wakarimashita.
(Starts driving)
Untenshu O-kyaku-san, Nihon-go, wakarimasu ka.
Ashur Hai, chotto.
Untenshu Nihongo, j zu desu ne.
Ashur Untenshu-san mo, j zu desu ne.
Untenshu Nihonbashi ni, ii tenpura-ya ga arimasu yo.
Ashur Hont desu ka. Namae, wakarimasu ka.
Untenshu , chotto... wakarimasen. Sumimasen.
(Taxi stops)
Untenshu San-zen san-byaku ni-j -en desu.
Ashur Hai. Sorekara, ry sh sho kudasai.
Untenshu Hai, o-tsuru to ry sh sho.
 Sore kara, hai, kore, chizu desu.
 Kore, eki. Kore, tenpura-ysa.

Ashur Wakarimasu? Okkei?
 Hai. Okkei desu.
 Arigat gozaimashita.

English

Taxi Driver Where to?
Ashley Nessian Automotive.
Taxi Driver Eh? Where?
Ashley Nessian Automotive in Nihonbashi.
Taxi Driver Hmm...do you know the address?
Ashley Yes, I do. Here it is.
Taxi Driver Ahh, okay. I got it.
(Starts driving)
Taxi Driver Do you understand Japanese, ma'am?
Ashley Yes, a little.
Taxi Driver Your Japanese is good!
Ashley Your Japanese is good, too.
Taxi Driver You know, there's a good tempura restaurant in Nihonbashi.
Ashley Really? Do you know the name?
Taxi Driver Ah, actually...I don't. Sorry.
(Taxi stops)
Taxi Driver That'll be 3320 yen.
Ashley Okay. And I'd like the receipt please.
Taxi Driver Okay, here's your change and your receipt.
 And... Here's a map.
 This is the station. This is the tempura restaurant.
 Do you understand? Okay?
Ashley Yes! Okay.
 Thank you very much.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
住所	じゅうしょ	j sho	address
わかります	わかります	wakarimasu	to understand, to know:-masu form
お客さん	おきゃくさん	o-kyaku-san	customer, guest



日本語	にほんご	Nihon-go	Japanese
ちょっと	ちょっと	chotto	a bit
上手	じょうず	j zu	skilled, good at
いい	いい	ii	good, nice, pleasant, fine; i-adj.
本当	ほんとう	hont	really, truly, truth, reality
領収書	りょうしゅうしょ	ry sh sho	receipt
地図	ちず	chizu	map
駅	えき	eki	station
どちら	どちら	dochira	where (honorific version of doko)
屋	や	ya	a suffix which means store or seller

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

住所はどこですか。
 あなたの気持ちがわかります。
 お客さん、日本は初めてですか。
 日本語、わかりません。
 ちょっと、すみません。
 ジョンの日本語は上手ですか。
 いい天気ですね。
 本当？
 領収書、おねがいします。
 地図をください。
 次の駅は大阪です。
 出身はどちらですか。
 いいラーメン屋はありますか。

What's the address?
 I know how you feel.
 Is this your first time in Japan, sir/ma'am?
 I don't understand Japanese.
 Excuse me for a minute.
 Is John's Japanese good?
 The weather is nice, isn't it?
 Really?
 Receipt, please
 Please give me the map.
 The next station is Osaka.
 Where are you from?(very polite)
 Are there any good ramen places?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #12 - Get Insider Information from the Locals

お客さん、日本語、わかりますか。

O-kyaku-san, Nihon-go, wakarimasu ka.

"Do you understand Japanese, ma'am?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to describe the location of something using the word **arimasu** (あります)

Learn how to talk about understanding using the verb **wakarimasu** (わかります)

Describing Location Using Arimasu (あります)

[place] ni [thing] ga arimasu

We can use the construction above to talk about the specific location of something. First we start with the location, followed by location particle **ni** (に), then the item, followed by subject particle **ga** (が), and end it all with **arimasu** (あります). For more information on **arimasu** (あります), please see Lesson 6.

Place	ni	Thing	ga	"there is"	Translation
日本橋 Nihonbashi	に ni	いいてんぷら屋 ii tempura-ya	が ga	あります arimasu	"There's a good tempura restaurant in Nihonbashi."
一階 I-kkai	に ni	トイレ toire	が ga	あります arimasu	"There's a restroom on the first floor."
エジプト Ejiputo	に ni	ピラミッド piramiddo	が ga	あります arimasu	"There are pyramids in Egypt."

Talking About Understanding Using Wakarimasu (わかります)

Wakarimasu (わかります) means "to understand" and is one of the most useful verbs you'll learn in Japanese.

わかります wakarimasu	"I understand" (present affirmative)*
わかりません wakarimasen	"I don't understand" (present negative)
わかりました wakarimashita	"I understand" (past affirmative)**
わかりませんでした wakarimasen deshita	"I didn't understand" (past negative)

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

分かりますか？ wakarimasu ka?	"Do you understand?" (question)
---------------------------	---------------------------------

**When you want to say that you understand something that someone has just explained to you (as in "I see" or "I get it now"), it is better to use the past tense, wakarimashita (分かりました). Please see the note below.

To say that you understand something, you can say:

[something] ga wakarimasu

The thing that the subject understands is usually marked by the particle ga (が). Note, however, that we can also omit this particle with no change in meaning, as seen in the dialogue.

Examples:

1. (私は) 日本語が分かります。
(Watashi wa) Nihon-go ga wakarimasu.
"I understand Japanese."
2. (私は) 英語が分かります。
(Watashi wa) eigo ga wakarimasu.
"I understand English."

If you want to emphasize that you only understand something a little, you can use the word chotto (ちょっと):

1. (私は) 日本語がちょっと分かります。
(Watashi wa) Nihon-go ga chotto wakarimasu.
"I understand a little Japanese."

To ask if someone understands something, you can ask:

[something] ga wakarimasu ka?

For Example:

英語が分かりますか。
Eigo ga wakarimasu ka.



"Do you understand English?"

What's the difference between *wakarimasu* (present tense) and *wakarimashita* (past tense)?

Wakarimasu (わかります): Use this to mean "I know" or to convey the meaning of "I can understand the meaning or value of something."

Wakarimashita (わかりました): Use this to mean "Now I understand something that I didn't know about before."

The particle *mo* (も)

The particle *mo* (も) means "also" and "in addition to" and we can use it in place of the topic particle *wa* (は) and subject particle *ga* (が). We saw this particle used in this exchange between Ashley and the taxi driver:

1. 運転手:日本語、上手ですね。
[Untenshu: Nihon-go, j zu desu ne.]
Taxi Driver: "Your Japanese is good!"
2. アシュリー:運転手さんも、上手ですね。
[Ashur: Untenshu-san mo, j zu desu ne.]
Ashley: "Your Japanese is good, **too**."

In this exchange, Ashley uses the particle *mo* (も) to mean that the taxi driver is good at Japanese too. You can put *mo* after the pronoun for "I" to mean "me too."

For Example:

私も! / ぼくも!
Watashi mo! / Boku mo!
"Me too!"

Cultural Insight

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Shop and Occupation Names

The word -ya (屋) means "shop" or "restaurant," but this word is not used on its own; instead, it is a suffix that is tacked on to the name of the item that the store specializes in. For example, ramen-ya (ラーメン屋) is a "ramen shop," sushi-ya (すし屋) is a "sushi restaurant," hon-ya (本屋) is a "bookstore," and so on.

When referring to someone by their occupation in Japanese (the waiter, the taxi driver, etc.), it is common to add the polite suffix -san (さん) to the person's occupation. A "taxi driver," for example, could be referred to as untenshu-san (運転手さん), a "waiter" could be referred to as ueit -san (ウェイターさん), etc.



Gengo Japanese S1

Learn the Proper Way to Do Business in Japan

13

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	7

Formal Kanji

受付	おはようございます。
アシユリー	おはようございます。 9時に松田部長と約束があります。
受付	お客様のお名前は。
アシユリー	ニューヨーク支社のアシユリーと申します。
受付	申し訳ございません。もう一度お名前おねがいします。
アシユリー	アシユリーです。
受付	アシユリー・ジョーンズ様ですね。こちらです。どうぞ。
(knock knock)	
部長	はい。
受付	失礼します。アシユリー・ジョーンズ様です。
松田部長	おー、アシユリーさん、久しぶり。
アシユリー	お久しぶりです。松田部長。 お元気ですか。
松田部長	元気ですよ。アシユリーさんは？
アシユリー	はい、おかげさまで、元気です。 あ、これ、どうぞ。お土産です。
松田部長	あー、すみませんね。ありがとう。 で、日本はどうですか。

Formal Kana

うけつけ	おはようございます。
アシユリー	おはようございます。 9時にまつだぶちょうとやくそくがあります。
うけつけ	おきゃくさまのおなまえは。
アシユリー	ニューヨークししゃのアシユリーともうします。
うけつけ	もうしわけございません。もういちどおなまえおねがいします。
アシユリー	アシユリーです。
うけつけ	アシユリー・ジョーンズさまですね。こちらです。どうぞ。
(knock knock)	
ぶちょう	はい。
うけつけ	しつれいします。アシユリー・ジョーンズさまです。
まつだぶちょう	おー、アシユリーさん、ひさしぶり。
アシユリー	おひさしぶりです。まつだぶちょう。 おげんきですか。

まつだぶちょう げんきですよ。アシュリーさんは？
アシュリー はい、おかげさまで、げんきです。
まつだぶちょう あ、これ、どうぞ。おみやげです。
あー、すみませんね。ありがとう。
で、にほんはどうですか。

Formal Romanization

Uketsuke Ohay gozaimasu.
Ashur Ohay gozaimasu.
9-ji ni Matsuda buch to yakusoku ga arimasu.
Uketsuke O-kyaku-sama no o-namae wa.
Ashur Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur to m shimasu.
Uketsuke M shiwake gozaimasen. M ichi-do o-namae onegaishimasu.
Ashur Ashur desu.
Uketsuke Ashur . J nzu-sama desu ne. Kochira desu. D zo.
(knock knock)
Buch Hai.
Uketsuke Shitsurei shimasu. Ashur J nzu-sama desu.
Matsuda buch , Ashur -san, hisashiburi.
Ashur O-hisashiburi desu. Matsuda buch .
O-genki desu ka.
Matsuda buch Genki desu yo. Ashur -san wa?
Ashur Hai, o-kage-sama de, genki desu.
A, kore, d zo. O-miyage desu.
Matsuda buch , sumimasen ne. Arigat .
De, Nihon wa d desu ka.

English

Receptionist Good morning.
Ashley Good morning.
I have an appointment with Mr. Matsuda at nine.
Receptionist May I have your name?
Ashley I'm Ashley from the New York office.
Receptionist I'm sorry; can I have your name again?
Ashley Ashley.



Receptionist (knock knock) Ms. Ashley Jones, yes? This way, please.
 Mr. Matsuda Yes?
 Receptionist I'm sorry to interrupt. Ashley is here.
 Mr. Matsuda Oh, Ashley! Long time no see!
 Ashley Long time no see, Mr. Matsuda.
 How are you?
 Mr. Matsuda I'm great! And you?
 Ashley I'm great, thank you.
 Oh, and this is for you. It's a gift.
 Mr. Matsuda Ohh, thank you!
 So, how's Japan?

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
受付	うけつけ	uketsuke	reception
約束	やくそく	yakusoku	promise
申します	もうします	m shimasu	(humble form) to be called, to say; -masu form
久しぶり	ひさしぶり	hisashiburi	Long time no see.
部長	ぶちょう	buch	department head
元気	げんき	genki	good, fine
お土産	おみやげ	o-miyage	gift, souvenir
支社	ししゃ	shisha	branch office
おかげ様で。	おかげさまで。	O-kage-sama de.	Thanks to you. Thanks for asking.

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

受付はどこですか。
 約束は何時ですか。
 水木一男と申します。
 太郎さん、久しぶりですね。
 田中さんはいい部長です。
 元気ですか。
 これは、お土産です。どうぞ。

Where is the reception?
 What time is the appointment?
 My name is Kazuo Mizuki.
 Taro, it's been a long time.
 Mr./Ms. Tanaka is a good manager.
 How are you?
 Here's something for you.



ロンドン支社のジョンソンです。

I'm Johnson from the London office.

A 「お元気ですか。」 B 「おかげ様で。」

A: How are you? B: Fine, thanks for asking.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #13 - Learn the Proper Way to Do Business in Japan

で、日本はどうですか。

De, Nihon wa d desu ka.

"So, how's Japan?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn useful phrases for a work environment

Learn expressions that can be used when you see someone for the first time in a long time

Ask how something is by using **d desu ka** (どうですか)

Useful Phrases for a Work Environment

In the Japanese work environment, we have many set phrases that we use through the day.

Set Phrases	Translation	Explanation
[Name]と約束があります。 [Name] to yakusoku ga arimasu.	"I have an appointment with [Name]"	Used to indicate you have an appointment with someone.
[Name]と申します。 [Name] to m shimasu.	"My name is [Name]"	A very formal way to introduce yourself.
申し訳ございません。 M shiwake gozaimasen.	"I'm very sorry."	A very formal way to apologize.
失礼します。 Shitsurei shimasu.	"Please excuse me," "I'm sorry to interrupt."	Said when entering or leaving a room.

Examples:

1. アシュリー: 9時に松田部長と約束があります。

Ashur : Ku-ji ni Matsuda-buch to yakusoku ga arimasu.

Ashley: "I have an appointment with Mr. Matsuda at nine."

2. アシュリー: ニューヨーク支社のアシュリーと申します。

Ashur : Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur to m shimasu.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Ashley: "I'm Ashley from the New York office."

- 受付: 申し訳ございません。もう一度お名前おねがいします。

Uketsuke: M shiwake gozaimasen. M ichi-do o-namae onegai shimasu.

Receptionist: "I'm sorry; can I have your name again?"

- 受付: 失礼します。アシュリー・ジョーンズ様です。

Uketsuke: Shitsurei shimasu. Ashur J nzu-sama desu.

Receptionist: "I'm sorry to interrupt. Ashley is here."

It's Been a Long Time!

We use the phrase hisashiburi (久しぶり) to greet someone that we have not seen for a long time.

Examples:

久しぶり Hisashiburi - "Long time no see"

We say this to friends or people of equal status to us.

お久しぶりです O-hisashiburi desu - "Long time no see"

This is a more formal version of the phrase above that we use towards superiors, etc.

お元気ですか O-genki desu ka - "How are you?"

A polite way to ask how someone is. Unlike the English "how are you?" we don't say this to the people we see every day. We generally reserve it for when we have not seen someone for a while and want to know how they are doing.

おかげさまで O-kage-sama de - "Thanks for asking" "Thanks to you"

This phrase is the equivalent of "thanks for asking" in English, and we often use it in response to o-genki desu ka? ("How are you?")

Asking How Something Is

In the dialogue, Mr. Matsuda asked Ashley about Japan using Nihon wa dō desu ka? (日本はどうですか。) You can use the question word dō (どう) to ask how something is ("How is it?").

[something] + wa d desu ka?

Examples:

Thing	wa (は)	how	copula	question ka (か)	Translation
東京 Tokyo	は wa	どう d	です desu	か ka	"How's Tokyo?"
ホテル Hoteru	は wa	どう d	です desu	か ka	"How's the hotel?"
学校 Gakko	は wa	どう d	です desu	か ka	"How's school?"
仕事 Shigoto	は wa	どう d	です desu	か ka	"How's work?"

Example:

1. 松田部長:で、日本はどうか。
Matsuda-buch : De, Nihon wa d desu ka.*
Mr. Matsuda: "So, how's Japan?"

* In this sentence, de (で) is short for それで (sore de), which means "so" or "and then."



Cultural Insight

Japanese Gift-Giving Culture - O-miyage

Giving gifts, or o-miyage, is a big part of Japanese culture. We often translate o-miyage as "souvenir," but the concept of o-miyage is a little different from that conjured up by the English word "souvenir." While we usually use "souvenir" to talk about something bought for oneself or close friends and family members on a trip as a memento, in Japanese we use o-miyage to talk about gifts that are brought back by someone who has traveled somewhere. It also indicates gifts that are brought by someone who is visiting from somewhere else. These gifts usually consist of something edible that is a specialty of the area. O-miyage are not only given to friends and family, but even to people you work with at the office.



Gengo Japanese S1

Making the Most of Your Time in Japan

14

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	8

Formal Kanji

松田部長 (knock-knock)	光岡君をお願いします。
光岡れい	失礼します。
松田部長	アシュリーさん、こちらは秘書の光岡君です。 光岡君、こちらは、ニューヨーク支社のアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。
光岡れい	はじめまして。 秘書の光岡れいと申します。
アシュリー	アシュリーと申します。 どうぞよろしくをお願いします。
松田部長 光岡れい アシュリー	光岡君、じゃ、アシュリーさんの今日のスケジュールは、こちらです。どうぞ。 ...十時から会議。 十二時に銀座きゅうべいに行く。ランチミーティング。 一時半に、イノベイティブ・ランゲージ・ラーニングに行く。プレゼンテーション。 四時半に横浜工場に行く。見学。 七時に横浜駅に行く。歓迎会。 うわー。すごい、スケジュールですね。
松田部長	日本へようこそ。

Formal Kana

まつだぶちょう (knock-knock)	みつおかくんをおねがいします。
みつおかれい	しつれいします。
まつだぶちょう	アシュリーさん、こちらはひしょのみつおかくんです。 みつおかくん、こちらは、ニューヨークししゅのアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。
みつおかれい	はじめまして。 ひしょのみつおかれいともうします。
アシュリー	アシュリーともうします。 どうぞよろしくおねがいします。
まつだぶちょう	みつおかくん、じゃ、アシュリーさんのきょうのスケジュールは
みつおかれい	こちらです。どうぞ。

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

アシュリー ...じゅうじからかいぎ。
じゅうじにぎんざきゅうべいに行く。ランチミーティング。
いちじはんに、イノベティブ・ランゲージ・ラーニングに行く。
。プレゼンテーション。
よじはんによこはまこうじょうに行く。けんがく。
しちじによこはまえきに行く。かんげいかい。
うわー。すごい、スケジュールですね。
まつだぶちょう にほんへようこそ。

Formal Romanization

Matsuda buch Mitsuoka-kun o onegai shimasu.
(knock-knock)
Mitsuoka Rei Shitsurei shimasu.
Matsuda buch Ashur -san, kochira wa hisho no Mitsuoka-kun desu.
Mitsuoka-kun, kochira wa, Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur J nzu-san.
Mitsuoka Rei Hajimemashite.
Hisho no Mitsuoka Rei to m shimasu.
Ashur Ashur to m shimasu.
D zo yoroshiku onegai shimasu.
Matsuda buch Mitsuoka-kun, ja, Ashur -san no ky no sukej ru wa.
Mitsuoka Rei Kochira desu. D zo.
Ashur ...J -ji kara kaigi.
J ni-ji ni Ginza Ky bei ni iku. Ranchi m tingu.
Ichi-ji han ni, Inobeitibu-rang ji-r ningu ni iku. Purezent shon.
Yo-ji han ni Yokohama k j ni iku. Kengaku.
Shichi-ji ni Yokohama-eki ni iku. Kangeikai.
Uw . Sugoi, sukej ru desu ne.
Matsuda buch Nihon e y koso.

English

Mr. Matsuda (intercom) Send Mitsuoka-kun in, please.
(knock knock)
Rei Mitsuoka I'm coming in...
Mr. Matsuda Ashley, this is Ms. Rei Mitsuoka, our secretary.
Mitsuoka-kun, this is Ashley from the New York office.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Rei Mitsuoka Nice to meet you.
 I'm Rei Mitsuoka, the secretary.

Ashley I'm Ashley.
 Nice to meet you.

Mr. Matsuda Mitsuoka-kun, do you have Ashley's schedule for the day?
Rei Mitsuoka Here it is.

Ashley Meeting at ten.
 Go to Ginza Kyubei at twelve. Lunch meeting.
 Go to Innovative Language Learning at one-thirty. Presentation.
 Go to the Yokohama factory at four-thirty. Take a tour.
 Go to Yokohama Station at seven. Welcome party.
 Wow, what a schedule!

Mr. Matsuda Welcome to Japan.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
秘書	ひしょ	hisho	secretary
はじめまして。	はじめまして。	Hajimemashite.	Nice to meet you.
会議	かいぎ	kaigi	meeting, conference
銀座	ぎんざ	Ginza	Ginza
行く	いく	iku	to go
見学	けんがく	kengaku	inspection, field trip
歓迎会	かんげいかい	kangeikai	welcome party
スケジュール	スケジュール	sukej ru	schedule
ランチミーティング	ランチミーティング	ranchi m tingu	lunch meeting
プレゼンテーション	プレゼンテーション	purezent shon	presentation
工場	こうじょう	k j	factory
ようこそ	ようこそ	Y koso	Welcome!

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

光岡さんは、松田部長の秘書です。

Ms. Mitsuoka is the secretary of Mr. Matsuda, the manager.

こんにちは。はじめまして。
朝7時から、会議があります。
銀座にいいすし屋があります。
明日空港に行きます。

Hello. Nice to meet you.
I have a meeting at 7 in the morning.
There's a good sushi bar in Ginza.
I'm going to the airport tomorrow.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

工場見学に行く。

金曜日、田中さんの歓迎会があります。

明日のスケジュールがわかりません。

12時から、ランチミーティングがあります。

田中さんは、プレゼンテーションが上手です。

明日の朝、工場に行きます。

ようこそ。にほんへ。

I'll go on a factory tour.

We'll have a welcome party for Mr. Tanaka on Friday.

I don't know my schedule for tomorrow.

We are going to have a lunch meeting at 12.

Mr./Ms. Tanaka is good at giving presentations.

I'm going to the factory tomorrow morning.

Welcome to Japan!

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese #14 - Making the Most of Your Time in Japan

こちらは、ニューヨーク支社のアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。

Kochira wa, Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur Jonzu-san.

"This is Ashley from the New York office."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn useful expressions for introducing and meeting people

Learn the verb *iku* (行く) which means "to go"

Learn the difference between the dictionary form and the *masu* form of a verb

Useful Expressions for Introducing and Meeting People

In this dialog, Mr. Matsuda introduced Ashley to Rei Mitsuoka. Let's look at the phrase he used to do this:

こちらは、ニューヨーク支社のアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。

Kochira wa, Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur Jonzu-san.

"This is Ashley from the New York office."

Let's look at the construction:

Kochira wa [Name] -san desu.

We can use the word *kochira* (こちら) to refer to someone that we are introducing to someone else.

Another example:

こちらは豊田一郎さんです。
Kochira wa Toyota Ichir -san desu.
"This is Mr. Ichiro Toyota."

The Verb Iku (行く)

In the dialog, Ashley was given a schedule for her business trip, which involved going to many places. The verb that means "go" is iku (行く).

[Place] ni iku

Let's take a look at this example:

私は東京に行く。
Watashi wa T ky ni iku.
"I go to Tokyo" or "I will go to Tokyo."

Because the Japanese language doesn't have a separate future tense, the above sentence could mean either "I go to Tokyo," or "I will go to Tokyo." If you want to avoid confusion and distinguish between the present and the future, you can specify when the action takes place:

明日、私は東京に行きます。
Ashita, watashi wa T ky ni ikimasu.
"Tomorrow, I'm going to Tokyo".

More examples:

Place	ni	iku	Translation
空港 K k	に ni	行く iku	I go/I'm going to the airport
横浜駅 Yokohama eki	に ni	行く iku	I go/I'm going to Yokohama Station
日本 Nihon	に ni	行く iku	I go/I'm going to Japan

*Note that we can use the particle e (へ) instead of ni (に).



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

When you want to specify when you are going somewhere, add the time followed by the particle ni (に). Note that relative time expressions such as ky (今日, "today") and ashita (明日, "tomorrow") do not need the particle ni (に).

[Time] ni [Place] ni iku

Time	ni	Place	ni	iku	Translation
7時 Shichi-ji	に ni	空港 k k	に ni	行く iku	I'm going to the airport at 7:00
3時 San-ji	に ni	横浜駅 Yokohama eki	に ni	行く iku	I'm going to Yokohama Station at 3:00
月曜日 Getsuy bi	に ni	東京 T ky	に ni	行く iku	I'm going to Tokyo on Monday

Iku (行く) is the dictionary form of the verb "to go," which we use in informal situations. In formal situations, we use ikimasu (行きます), which is known as the masu form because it ends in -masu. Please see below for more information on these two forms.

The Particle ni (に)

In the explanations above, we covered two different uses of the particle ni (に).

First, the particle ni (に) indicates movement toward a place.

For Example:

私は東京に行きます

Watashi wa T ky ni ikimasu.

"I go to Tokyo" or "I'm going to Tokyo"

We also use ni (に) with the verbs kimasu (来ます "to come"), and kaerimasu (かえります, "to return").

For Example:

1. 私は東京に来ます。
Watashi wa T ky ni kimasu.
"I come to Tokyo" or "I'm coming to Tokyo"
2. 私は東京にかえります。
Watashi wa T ky ni kaerimasu.
"I return to Tokyo" or "I'm returning to Tokyo"

Dictionary Forms of Verbs

Masu Form vs. Dictionary form

The verbs we have introduced so far have been in the masu form: shimasu (します), arimasu (あります), wakarimasu (わかります). All verbs in the masu form have a corresponding form called the dictionary form. To look up the verbs in a dictionary, you need to know this dictionary form of the verb. In the dialogue, we saw the dictionary form of the verb iku (行く). For more information on how to make the dictionary form from the masu form of a verb, please see the Conjugation Lessons.

Dictionary Form	Masu Form
iku (行く)	ikimasu (行きます)

In many cases, we use the dictionary form when speaking informal Japanese, and the masu form when speaking formal Japanese.

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some more phrases that are related to time. For more detailed information on telling time, please check the following Appendix lesson: Time: Hours/Minutes (Appendix #2).

Cultural Insight

Usage of the Name Suffix -kun (くん)

Earlier, we introduced the word -kun as a polite suffix that is attached to the names of boys and men. However, there are some men who use -kun after the names of their female subordinates. When used in this way, -kun is attached to the family name. We saw an example of this in the dialog when Mr. Matsuda referred to Ms. Mitsuoka, his secretary, as



Mitsuoka-kun.

こちらは秘書の光岡君です。

Kochira wa hisho no Mitsuoka-kun desu.

"This is Ms. Mitsuoka, the secretary."

In-group vs. Out-group

In Japanese society, a big distinction is made between in-group and out-group members. In-group members include those in your family, people who work in the same company as you, and so on, while out-group members refer to everyone else who is not in your in-group. Ashley, Ms. Mitsuoka, and Mr. Matsuda all work for the same company, which means that they belong to the same in-group. Because of this, Mr. Matsuda referred to Ms. Mitsuoka with the polite suffix -kun, as well as with the polite word for "this," kochira. If he were introducing Ms. Mitsuoka to someone from the out-group (i.e., outside the company), he wouldn't attach -kun to her name, and would probably address her using kore rather than kochira:

(when addressing the out-group)

これは秘書の光岡です。

Kore wa hisho no Mitsuoka desu.

"This is Mitsuoka, the secretary."



Gengo Japanese S1

Stand Out from the Crowd with these Language Learning Tricks and Tips

15

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	4
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	8

Formal Kanji

- 松田部長 皆さん、お疲れさまです。
こちらは、ニューヨーク支社のアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。
じゃ、アシュリーさん自己紹介と乾杯をお願いしますね。
- アシュリー え？日本語で？
- 松田部長 ええ。もちろん日本語で。
- アシュリー 皆さん、こんばんは。はじめまして。
私の名前はアシュリー・ジョーンズです。アメリカ人です。
出身はニューヨークのロングアイランドです。
日本語は...ちょっとわかります。
でも、まだ上手じゃありません。
- 鈴木 上手だよ！
- アシュリー でも、英語はとても上手です。
- 鈴木 当然だよ！
- アシュリー 皆さん、よろしくお願いします。
- (applause)
- アシュリー じゃ、乾杯！
- 全員 乾杯！
- 本田大介 アシュリーさん！久しぶり！元気？
- アシュリー 元気じゃない。
うそうそ。
本田君は元気？
- 本田大介 元気元気。
- アシュリー あ、アシュリーさん、ビールがないですね。何、飲みます？
お勧めは。

Formal Kana

- まつだぶちょう みなさん、おつかれさまです。
こちらは、ニューヨークししゃのアシュリー・ジョーンズさん。
じゃ、アシュリーさんじこしょうかいとかんぱいをおねがいしま
すね。
- アシュリー え？にほんごで？
- まつだぶちょう ええ。もちろんにほんごで。
- アシュリー みなさん、こんばんは。はじめまして。
わたしのなまえはアシュリー・ジョーンズです。アメリカじんで

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

す。
しゅっしんはニューヨークのロングアイランドです。
にほんごは...ちょっとわかります。
でも、まだじょうずじゃありません。
じょうずだよ！
でも、えいごはとてもしょうずです。
とうぜんだよ！
みなさん、よろしくおねがいします。
じゃ、かんぱい！
かんぱい！

ほんだだいすけ アシュリーさん！ひさしぶり！げんき？
アシュリー げんきじゃない。
うそうそ。
ほんだくんはげんき？
ほんだだいすけ げんきげんき。
アシュリー あ、アシュリーさん、ビールがないですね。なに、のみます？
おすすめは。

Formal Romanization

Matsuda buch Mina-san, o-tsukare-sama desu.
Kochira wa, Ny Y ku shisha no Ashur J nzu-san.
Ja, Ashur -san jikosh kai to kanpai o onegai shimasu ne.
Ashur E? Nihon-go de?
Matsuda buch . Mochiron nihon-go de.
Ashur Mina-san, konbanwa. Hajimemashite.
Watashi no namae wa Ashur J nzu desu. Amerika-jin desu.
Shusshin wa Ny Y ku no Ronguairando desu.
Nihon-go wa... chotto wakarimasu.
Demo, mada j zu ja arimasen.
Suzuki J zu da yo!
Ashur Demo, eigo wa totemo j zu desu.
Suzuki T zen da yo!
Ashur Mina-san, yoroshiku onegai shimasu.
(applause)
Ashur Ja, kanpai!
Zen'in Kanpai!

Honda Daisuke Ashur -san! Hisashiburi! Genki?
Ashur Genki ja nai.
Usu uso.
Honda-kun wa genki?
Honda Daisuke Genki genki.
Ashur A, Ashur -san, b ru ga nai desu ne. Nani, nomimasu?
O-susume wa.

English

Matsuda Good work today, everyone!
This is Ashley Jones from the New York office.
Ashley, could you introduce yourself and make a toast?
Ashley Huh? In Japanese??
Matsuda Yes, of course in Japanese!
Ashley Good evening, everyone. Nice to meet you.
My name is Ashley Jones. I'm American.
I'm from Long Island in New York.
I understand...a little Japanese.
But I'm not good at it yet.
Suzuki Yes you are!!
Ashley But I'm very good at English.
Suzuki Well, of course you are!
Ashley I look forward to working with you all!
(applause)
Ashley Cheers!
Everyone Cheers!

Daisuke Honda Ashley-san! Long time no see! How are ya?
Ashley Not good...
Just kidding! How are you Honda-kun?
Daisuke Honda I'm great!
Ashley Oh, you don't have any beer do you. What will you have to drink?
What do you recommend?

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
皆さん	みなさん	mina-san	everyone
自己紹介	じこしょうかい	jiko sh kai	self-introduction
もちろん	もちろん	mochiron	Of course.
こんばんは。	こんばんは。	Konbanwa.	Good evening.
乾杯	かんぱい	Kanpai	Cheers! (exp.)
まだ	まだ	mada	yet
俺	おれ	ore	I (used by males)
とても	とても	totemo	very
当然	とうぜん	t zen	natural, of course
うそ	うそ	uso	lie, falsehood
ビール	ビール	b ru	beer
飲みます	のみます	nomimasu	to drink; masu form
お勧め	おすすめ	o-susume	recommendation

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

皆さん、こんにちは。
自己紹介をおねがいします。
もちろん、行きます。
こんばんは。いらっしやいませ。
かんぱーい！
私は、まだ、携帯がありません。
俺は学生です。
これはとてもおいしいです。
当然、アシュリーは英語がわかります。
うそです。
生ビール、ひとつください。
何を飲みますか。
おすすめは何ですか。

Hello, everybody
Please introduce yourself.
Of course, I'm going.
Good evening. May I help you?
Cheers!
I don't have a cell phone yet.
I'm a student.(informal/rough)
This is very tasty.
Of course, Ashley understands English.
It's a lie.
One draft beer, please.
What would you like to drink?
What do you recommend?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #15 - Stand out from the Crowd with these Language Learning Tricks and Tips

でも、英語はとても上手です。

Demo, eigo wa totemo j zu desu.

"But I'm very good at English."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to describe things using adjectives

Learn more about formal and informal speech

Describing Things Using Adjectives

Using adjectives to describe things can really make your Japanese more colorful.

There are 2 types of adjectives:

i-adjectives

na-adjectives

In this lesson, you'll learn basic sentence structure using nouns and adjectives.

Informal

Affirmative	[topic] wa [noun/na-adjective] (da)	[topic] is [noun/na-adjective]
Negative	[topic] wa [noun/na-adjective] ja nai	[topic] is not [noun/na-adjective]

Da (だ) is the informal version of the copula desu (です), but we cannot use it after all adjectives. Please see the next lesson for more information on i-adjectives and na-adjectives.

Example:

1. アシュリーは学生だ。
Ashur wa gakusei da.
"Ashley is a student."
2. アシュリーは元気だ。
Ashur wa genki da.
"Ashley is fine."
3. アシュリーは学生じゃない。
Ashur wa gakusei ja nai.
"Ashley isn't a student."
4. アシュリーは元気じゃない。
Ashur wa genki ja nai.
"Ashley isn't fine."

Now, let's take a look at the formal versions of the phrases above:

Formal

Affirmative	[topic] wa [noun/na-adjective] desu	[topic] is [noun/na-adjective]
Negative	[topic] wa [noun/na-adjective] ja arimasen [topic] wa [noun/na-adjective] ja nai desu	[topic] is not [noun/na-adjective]

Example:

1. アシュリーは学生です。
Ashur wa gakusei desu.
"Ashley is a student."
2. アシュリーは元気です。
Ashur wa genki desu.
"Ashley is fine."
3. アシュリーは学生じゃありません。
Ashur wa gakusei ja arimasen.
"Ashley isn't a student."
4. アシュリーは元気じゃありません。
Ashur wa genki ja arimasen.
"Ashley isn't fine."

Formal and Informal Speech (Verbs)

In the last lesson, we briefly introduced the concept of the dictionary form (informal) and the masu form (formal) of verbs, using iku/ikimasu ("to go") as an example. For information about conjugating between the masu form and the dictionary form of a verb See Conjugation Lesson 5.

In this lesson, you'll learn the conjugation rule for Class 1 verbs.

When the verb is in ~~the~~ masu form
Change the final -imasu to -u



When the verb is in the dictionary form
Change the final -u to -imasu

Informal	Formal	English
aru (ある)	arimasu (あります)	to exist
nomu (飲む)	nomimasu (飲みます)	to drink
iku (行く)	ikimasu (行きます)	to go

Cultural Insight

Being Modest in Japanese

In Japan, being modest is considered a virtue. When complimented, Japanese people usually deny or downplay the compliment, even when there is some truth to it. Ashley was being modest in her introduction speech when she said:

日本語はちょっと分かります。でも、まだ上手じゃありません。
Nihon-go wa chotto wakarimasu. Demo, mada j zu ja arimasen.
"I understand...a little Japanese. But I'm not good at it yet."

Even though Ashley understands more than just "a little" Japanese, she downplays her ability by saying she only understands a little and is not that good at it. Being modest and using these kinds of phrases will go a long way in Japan!

O-tsukare-sama desu (お疲れさまです)

In the dialogue, Mr. Matsuda started speaking to his group of subordinates with the phrase o-tsukare sama desu (お疲れさまです). This phrase literally means, "You must be tired," and is used to appreciate someone's hard work and effort. It is commonly used as a greeting in the workplace. When recognizing someone's hard work that has already been completed, the copula desu can also be changed to the past tense, deshita, to create the phrase O-tsukare-sama deshita (お疲れさまでした).





Gengo Japanese S1

Fit in and Make Friends - Several Surefire Phrases to Help Your Social Life

16

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	8

Formal Kanji

- 本田大介 難しい質問ですね。
うーん。何が好きですか。
甘いお酒が好きですか。
- アシュリー 甘いカクテルは好きじゃないです。
本田大介 じゃ、日本酒は？
アシュリー 任せます。
- 本田大介 はい、どうぞ。
アシュリー うわー。きれいなカップ。
本田大介 ああ、それはおちょこ。
アシュリー おちょこ？変な名前。
鈴木すばる(drunk) ねえねえ、アシュリーちゃんは花火が好き？
)
- アシュリー はなび・・・は何ですか。
鈴木すばる ヒュードドン！パッ
本田大介 英語でファイヤーワークだね。
鈴木すばる そうそう、ファイヤーワーク！ファイヤーワーク！
アシュリー ああ、好きです。大好きです。
鈴木すばる 本当？明日の夜、暇？

Formal Kana

- ほんだだいすけ むずかしいしつもんですね。
うーん。なにがすきですか。
あまいおさけがすきですか。
- アシュリー あまいカクテルはすきじゃないです。
ほんだだいすけ じゃ、にほんしゅは？
アシュリー まかせます。
- ほんだだいすけ はい、どうぞ。
アシュリー うわー。きれいなカップ。
ほんだだいすけ ああ、それはおちょこ。
アシュリー おちょこ？へんななまえ。
すずきすばる(drunk) ねえねえ、アシュリーちゃんのはなびがすき？
nk)
- アシュリー はなび・・・はなんですか。

すずきすばる ヒュードドン！パッ
ほんだだいすけ えいごでファイヤーワークだね。
すずきすばる そうそう、ファイヤーワーク！ファイヤーワーク！
アシュリー ああ、すきです。だいすきです。
すずきすばる ほんとう？あしたのよる、ひま？

Formal Romanization

Honda Daisuke Muzukashii shitsumon desu ne.
n. Nani ga suki desu ka.
Amai o-sake ga suki desu ka.
Ashur Amai kakuteru wa suki ja nai desu.
Honda Daisuke Ja, Nihonshu wa?
Ashur Makasemasu.

Honda Daisuke Hai, d zo.
Ashur Uw . kirei na kappu.
Honda Daisuke , sore wa o-choko.
Ashur O-choko?Hen na namae.
Suzuki N n , Ashur -chan wa hanabi ga suki?
Subaru(drunk)
Ashur Hanabi... wa nan desu ka.
Suzuki Subaru Hy dodon! Pa
Honda Daisuke Eigo de faiy w ku da ne.
Suzuki Subaru S s , faiy w ku! Faiy w ku!
Ashur , suki desu. Daisuki desu.
Suzuki Subaru Hont ? Ashita no yoru, hima?

English

Daisuke Honda Well, that's a tough question.
Hmm...what do you like?
Do you like sweet alcohol?
Ashley No, I don't like sweet alcohol.
Daisuke Honda Okay, how about Japanese sake?
Ashley I'll leave it up to you!



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Daisuke Honda Here you go!
Ashley Wow, what a pretty cup!
Daisuke Honda Oh, that's an "o-choko."
Ashley "O-choko?" That's a weird name.
Subaru Suzuki Hey, Ashley...do you like "hanabi?"
Ashley What's..."hanabi?"
Subaru Suzuki *Hyuuuuu...bang!*Daisuke Honda "Fireworks" in English.
Subaru Suzuki Yeah, yeah, fireworks! Fireworks!
Ashley Yes, I like them! I really like them.
Subaru Suzuki Really? Are you free tomorrow night?

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
難しい	むずかしい	muzukashii	difficult
質問	しつもん	shitsumon	question
何	なに	nani	what
好き	すき	suki	to like, likable; Adj(na)
甘い	あまい	amai	sweet;Adj (i)
お酒	おさけ	o-sake	sake, alcohol
日本酒	にほんしゅ	Nihonshu	Japanese rice wine
きれい	きれい	kirei	beautiful;Adj(na)
変	へん	hen	strange, odd, eccentric; Adj(na)
花火	はなび	hanabi	fireworks
大好き	だいすき	daisuki	love, really like;Adj(na)
暇	ひま	hima	free ; Adj(na)
カクテル	カクテル	kakuteru	cocktail
任せます	まかせます	makasemasu	to leave to someone, to entrust someone with something
カップ	カップ	kappu	cup
おちょこ	おちょこ	o-choko	sake cup

Vocabulary Sample Sentences



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

日本語は難しいです。 すみません。質問があります。 何を飲みますか。 私はオードリー・ヘップバーンが好きです。 アメリカのクッキーは甘いです。 私はお酒が好きです。 日本酒がありますか。 このイヤリングはきれいです。 今日は、変な天気だ。 今夜、花火大会があります。 私はスポーツが大好きです。 明日、暇ですか。 カクテルは嫌いです。 A:明日、どこ行く。 B:任せます。	Japanese is difficult. Excuse me. I have a question. What would you like to drink? I like Audrey hepburn. American cookies are sweet. I like alcohol. Do you have Japanese rice wine? These earrings are beautiful. The weather is weird today. There is a fireworks show tonight. I love sports. Are you free tomorrow? I don't like cocktails. A: Where shall we go tomorrow? B:I'll leave it up to you.
きれいなコーヒーカップですね。 おちょこを2つください。	That's a beautiful coffee cup. Two sake cups, please.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #16 - Fit in and Make Friends - Several surefire phrases to help your social life

甘いお酒が好きですか。

Amai o-sake ga suki desu ka.

"Do you like sweet alcohol?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn about i-adjectives and na-adjectives

Learn how to talk about what you like using the word **uki** (好き)

Talk about degrees of liking someone or something

Prenominal Usage of I-Adjectives and Na-Adjectives

In Japanese, there are two kinds of adjectives: i-adjectives and na-adjectives. For more information on these two types, please check Conjugation Lessons 2 and 3. Let's look at how these two adjectives differ when they occur in front of a noun.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Adjectives that end in "i" are i-adjectives and they can come right before a noun.

[i-adjective] + [noun]

あまい amai	おさけ o-sake	sweet liquor
若い wakai	人 hito	young person
暑い atsui	日 hi	hot da

Na-adjectives need an na (な) after them when they come before a noun.

[na-adjective] + na + [Noun]

へん hen	な na	なまえ namae	strange name
きれい kirei	な na	花火 hanabi	pretty fireworks
たいへん taihen	な na	仕事 shigoto	tough job

Using Suki (好き)

To talk about what you like, you can use the adjective suki (好き). This adjective literally means, "liked" or "likeable" but has the same meaning as "I like" in English.

Affirmative

Formal:	[subject] wa [object] ga suki desu	[subject] like(s) [object]
Informal:	[subject] wa [object] ga suki (da)	[subject] like(s) [object]

Examples:

1. 私はねこが好きです。
Watashi wa neko ga suki desu.
"I like cats."

豊田さんはお酒が好きです。
Toyota-san wa o-sake ga suki desu.
"Mr. Toyota likes alcohol."

Question

Formal:	[subject] wa [object] ga suki desu ka?	Does [subject] like [object]?
Informal:	[subject] wa [object] ga suki?	Does [subject] like [object]?

Example:

(アシュリーさんは) 甘いお酒が好きですか。
(Ashur -san wa) amai o-sake ga suki desu ka?.
"Ashley, do you like sweet drinks?"

Degrees of Liking/Not Liking Something

Let's look at some different words that indicate different degrees of liking/not liking something.

In these examples, we assume that the subject is "I."

[object] がだいすき (です) [object] ga daisuki (desu)	"I love [object]"
[object] がすき (です) [object] ga suki (desu)	"I like [object]"
[object] がすきじゃない (です) [object] ga suki janai (desu) [object] がすきじゃありません [object] ga suki ja arimasen	"I don't like [object]"
[object] がきらい (です) [object] ga kirai (desu)	"I hate [object]"
[object] がだいきらい (です) [object] ga daikirai (desu)	"I really hate [object]"

Examples:

1. てんぷらが大好きです。



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Tenpura ga daisuki desu.

"I love tempura."

- お酒が好きじゃないです。

O-sake ga suki ja nai desu.

"I don't like alcohol."

- うそがきらいです。

Usu ga kirai desu.

"I hate lies."

Vocab Usage

In the dialog, we saw the word amai (甘い), which means "sweet". Let's take a look at some more vocabulary used for describing taste.

甘い	amai	sweet
しょっぱい	shoppai	salty
すっぱい	suppai	sour
辛い	karai	spicy
苦い	nigai	bitter

Cultural Insight

So What IS Sake?

Many English speakers are familiar with the word "sake," which we use in English to talk about Japanese rice wine. In Japanese, the word sake, or o-sake, as it is commonly known with the polite prefix o- added, refers to alcohol in general. Japanese rice wine that is known as "sake" in English is called Nihon-shu in Japanese. It's important to note that in Japan, alcohol is a big part of socializing, especially in the business world when going out with co-workers or clients. If you would rather not drink, don't hesitate to refuse by saying O-sake, dame desu (お酒、だめです) which literally means "Alcohol is no good," but comes across as "I don't drink alcohol."

Fireworks

Fireworks festivals, known as hanabi taikai (花火大会) in Japanese, are very popular events that are held in the summer throughout Japan. Major fireworks festivals draw crowds of thousands of people, and unless you go early and reserve a space, it can sometimes be hard

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

to find a place to sit and enjoy the fireworks! Many people go in big groups with friends, family, or co-workers, and it is common to eat and drink as you sit and watch the fireworks. The word for fireworks, hanabi (花火), is made up of the words for "flower" and "fire."





Gengo Japanese S1

Understanding Directions - Never Get Lost Again

17

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	4
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	11

Formal Kanji

本田大介 もしもし？アシュリーさん、今、どこにいますか。
アシュリー ええっと……。わかりません。
本田大介 近くに何がありますか。
アシュリー 本屋と...銀行と...大きい公園があります。
鈴木すばる あ、もしもし、鈴木です。
 公園の隣に花屋がある？
アシュリー 花屋？ないですよ。
鈴木すばる 近くにコンビニはある？
アシュリー はい、あります。
 私は、今、セブンイレブンの前にいます。
鈴木すばる セブンイレブンの前？
 セブンイレブンの左に花屋はない？
アシュリー あー！ある！あります。
鈴木すばる みんな、花屋の前にいるよ。
アシュリー 花屋の前？あー！（runs）
 すみません、みなさん。
本田大介 大丈夫。問題ないですよ。
アシュリー うわー。それは、着物ですか？
光岡れい 着物じゃないです。これは、浴衣。
アシュリー ゆかた？
 へえー。かわいいですね。
本田大介 じゃ、行きましょう。
click here to listen to the entire conversation.

Formal Kana

ほんだだいすけ もしもし？アシュリーさん、いま、どこにいますか。
アシュリー ええっと……。わかりません。
ほんだだいすけ ちかくなになにがありますか。
アシュリー ほんやと...ぎんこうと...おおきいこうえんがあります。
すずきすばる あ、もしもし、すずきです。
 こうえんのとおりにはなやがある？
アシュリー はなや？ないですよ。
すずきすばる ちかくにコンビニはある？
アシュリー はい、あります。
 わたしは、いま、セブンイレブンのまえにいます。

すずきすばる セブンイレブンのまえ？
セブンイレブンのひだりにはなやはない？
アシュリー あー！ある！あります。
すずきすばる みんな、はなやのまえにいるよ。
アシュリー はなやのまえ？ああー！（runs）
すみません、みなさん。
ほんだだいすけ だいじょうぶ。もんだいがないですよ。
アシュリー うわー。それは、きものですか？
みつおかれい きものじゃないです。これは、ゆかた。
アシュリー ゆかた？
へえー。かわいいですね。
ほんだだいすけ じゃ、いきましよう。

Formal Romanization

Honda Daisuke Moshimoshi? Ashur -san, ima, doko ni imasu ka.
Ashur tto....Wakarimasen.
Honda Daisuke Chikaku ni nani ga arimasu ka.
Ashur Hon-ya to... gink to... kii k en ga arimasu.
Suzuki Subaru A, moshimoshi, Suzuki desu.
Ashur K en no tonari ni hana-ya ga aru?
Hana-ya? Nai desu yo.
Suzuki Subaru Chikaku ni konbini wa aru?
Ashur Hai, arimasu.
Watashi wa, ima, Sebun Irebun no mae ni imasu.
Suzuki Subaru Sebun Irebun no mae?
Sebun Irebun no hidari ni hana-ya wa nai?
Ashur ! Aru! Arimasu.
Suzuki Subaru Minna, hana-ya no mae ni iru yo.
Ashur Hana-ya no mae? ! (runs)
Sumimasen, mina-san.
Honda Daisuke Daij bu. Mondai nai desu yo.
Ashur Uw . Sore wa, kimono desu ka?
Mitsuoka Rei Kimono ja nai desu. Kore wa, yukata.
Ashur Yukata?
H . Kawaii desu ne.
Honda Daisuke Ja, ikimash .

English

Daisuke Honda Hello? Ashley, where are you now?
 Ashley Umm... I don't know!
 Daisuke Honda What's nearby?
 Ashley There's a bookstore...and a bank...and a big park.
 Subaru Suzuki Oh hi, it's Suzuki.
 Is there a flower shop next to the park?
 Ashley Flower shop? No, there isn't.
 Subaru Suzuki Is there a convenience store nearby?
 Ashley Yes, there is.
 Right now, I'm in front of Seven Eleven.
 Subaru Suzuki In front of Seven Eleven?
 Isn't there a flower shop to the left of it?
 Ashley ...Oh! Yes! There is.
 Subaru Suzuki We're all in front of the flower shop.
 Ashley In front of the flower shop? Oh!! (runs)
 I'm so sorry, everyone.
 Daisuke Honda It's okay, no problem!
 Ashley Wow, is that a kimono?
 Rei Mitsuoka It's not a kimono. This is a yukata.
 Ashley Yukata?
 Wow, it's cute!
 Daisuke Honda Well then, let's go!

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
います	います	imasu	to be (animate), to exist; -masu form
いる	いる	iru	to be, to exist
近く	ちかく	chikaku	near
本屋	ほんや	hon-ya	bookstore
銀行	ぎんこう	gink	bank
大きい	おおきい	kii	big
公園	こうえん	k en	park
隣	となり	tonari	next to, next door
コンビニ	コンビニ	konbini	convenience store
前	まえ	mae	before, in front

左	ひだり	hidari	left
みんな	みんな	min'na	everyone
問題	もんだい	mondai	problem
着物	きもの	kimono	kimono
浴衣	ゆかた	yukata	light cotton kimono
かわいい	かわいい	kawaii	cute, pretty
花屋	はなや	hana-ya	flower shop, florist
セブンイレブン	セブンイレブン	Sebun-Irebun	Seven Eleven(convenience store)

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

5	<p>彼氏がいますか。 今どこにいる？ 近くに駅がありますか。 今、本屋にいます。 日本橋に日本銀行があります。 銀行の前に大きい本屋がある。 私は、この公園が大好きです。 銀行は、本屋の隣です。 私はコンビニに行きます。 銀行の前に大きい本屋がある。 コンビニの左に、おいしいラーメン屋があります。 私は、クラスみんなが大好きです。 ちょっと問題があります。 私は着物が好きです。 浴衣がありますか。 その浴衣はかわいい。 花屋はどこですか。 セブンイレブンのパンはおいしい。</p>	<p>Do you have a boyfriend? Where are you now? Is there a station nearby? I'm at the bookstore now. There's a Bank of Japan in Nihonbashi. There is a big bookstore in front of the bank. I love this park. The bank is next to a book store. I'll go to the convenience store. There is a big bookstore in front of the bank. There is a good ramen shop to the left of the convenience store. I love all of my classmates. I have a bit of a problem. I like kimonos. Do you have a yukata (light cotton kimono)? That yukata is pretty. Where's the florist? The bread sold at Seven Eleven is good.</p>
---	--	---

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #17 - Understanding Directions - Never Get Lost Again
はなやがあります。

Hana-ya ga arimasu.
"There's a flower shop."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn the difference between arimasu (あります) and imasu (います) and when to use each

Learn how to talk about locations in more detail

Learn how to make a suggestion with mash (-ましょう)

Using Arimasu (あります) and Imasu (います)

Arimasu (あります) and imasu (います) are both verbs that express "to be," "to exist," "to be located," or "to have." We use arimasu (あります), which we covered in Lesson 6, for inanimate things, whereas we use imasu (います) for animate things such as people and animals.

[Inanimate thing] ga arimasu (formal) = "There is ~," "There are ~," "I have ~"

[Inanimate thing] ga aru (informal) = "There is ~/" "There are ~/" "I have ~"

Affirmative:

There's a flower shop.

Formal: 花屋があります。 [Hana-ya ga arimasu.]

Informal: 花屋がある。 [Hana-ya ga aru.]

Negative:

There isn't a flower shop.

Formal: 花屋がありません。 [Hana-ya ga arimasen.]

Informal: 花屋がない。 [Hana-ya ga nai.]

Examples:

1. 花屋があります。
Hana-ya ga arimasu.
"There's a flower shop."
2. ちずがあります。
Chizu ga arimasu.
"I have a map."
3. 時間がある。
Jikan ga aru.
"I have time."

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

[Animate thing] ga imasu (formal) = "There is ~/" "There are ~/" "I have ~"

[Animate thing] ga iru (informal) = "There is ~/" "There are~/" "I have ~"

Affirmative:

There is a teacher (here).

Formal: 先生がいます。 [Sensei ga imasu.]

Informal: 先生がいる。 [Sensei ga iru.]

Negative:

There isn't a teacher (here).

Formal: 先生がいません。 [Sensei ga imasen.]

Informal: 先生がいない。 [Sensei ga inai.]

Examples:

1. 松田部長がいます。
Matsuda-buch ga imasu.
"Mr. Matsuda is here."
2. ボーイフレンドがいますか。
B ifurendo ga imasu ka.
"Do you have a boyfriend?"
3. ペットがいる。
Petto ga iru.
"I have a pet."

[Talking About Location in More Detail](#)

First, to talk about the location of something in relation to a landmark, we use the particle no (の). See Lesson 12 for how to describe location using arimasu (あります).

[Landmark] no [location]

本屋の隣 (ほんやのとなり) Hon-ya no tonari	"Next to the bookstore"
花屋の前 (はなやのまえ) Hana-ya no mae	"In front of the flower shop"
駅の近く (えきのちかく)	"Near the station"



Eki no chikaku

By using the location particle ni (に) after the location, we can talk about where an object is.

[Landmark] no [location] ni [object] ga arimasu/imasu.

本屋の隣 (ほんやのとなり) Hon-ya no tonari	に ni	コンビニがあります。 konbini ga arimasu.	"There is a convenience store next to the bookstore."
駅の近く (えきのちかく) Eki no chikaku	に ni	銀行があります。 gink ga arimasu.	"There is a bank near the station."
花屋の前 (はなやのまえ) Hana-ya no mae	に ni	ねこがいます。 neko ga imasu.	"There is a cat in front of the flower shop."

Example from the dialogue:

鈴木すばる: 公園の隣に花屋がある?

Suzuki Subaru: K en no tonari ni hana-ya ga aru?

Subaru Suzuki: "Is there a flower shop next to the park?"

Making Suggestions with -mash (-ましょう)

At the end of the dialogue, Daisuke suggests that they go ("Let's go!") using ikimash (行きましょう). This -mash is known as the volitional form and we use it to politely suggest, propose, or invite.

To make the volitional, we start with a verb in the masu form (see Lesson 14), take away -masu, and attach -mash instead.

Masu form of a verb	Take away -masu	Attach -mash
ikimasu (いきます)	iki-	ikimash (いきましょう)

More Examples:

Masu Form of a Verb	Meaning	Volitional Form (-mash)	Meaning
tabemasu (たべます)	"to eat"	tabemash (たべましょう)	"Let's eat"
nomimasu	"to drink"	nomimash	"Let's drink"



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

(のみます)		(のみましよう)	
machimasu (まちます)	"to wait"	machimash (まちましよう)	"Let's wait"

Example from the Dialogue:

本田大介:じゃ、行きましよう。

Honda Daisuke: Ja, ikimash .

Daisuke Honda: "Well then, let's go!"

Vocabulary Usage: Hello?

もしもし。[Moshi moshi.] "Hello?" - This phrase is largely used when answering the phone in Japanese and is equivalent to "Hello?". It can also be used to get someone's attention when you think that they can't hear you or are not paying attention.

Vocabulary Building: Place Name and Location Vocabulary

Place Name Vocabulary

銀行 (ぎんこう) gink	"bank"
本屋 (ほんや) hon-ya	"bookstore"
花屋 (はなや) hana-ya	"flower shop"
駅 (えき) eki	"train station"
公園 (こうえん) k en	"park"
入り口 (いりぐち) iriguchi	"entrance"
出口 (でぐち) deguchi	"exit"
空港 (くうこう) k k	"airport"
タクシー乗り場	"taxi stand"

(タクシーのりば) takush noriba	
バス乗り場 (バスのりば) basu noriba	"bus terminal"
コンビニ konbini	"convenience store"
学校 (がっこう) gakk	"school"
大学 (だいがく) daigaku	"university"
ビル biru	"building"
スーパー s p	"supermarket"

Location Vocabulary

前 (まえ) mae	"in front of"
後ろ (うしろ) ushiro	"behind"
右 (みぎ) migi	"right"
左 (ひだり) hidari	"left"
隣 (となり) tonari	"next to"
近く (ちかく) chikaku	"close to"
上 (うえ) ue	"above"
下 (した) shita	"below"
中 (なか) naka	"inside"

Cultural Insight

Yukata and Kimono

If you visit Japan in the summer, you might see some people wearing yukata (浴衣), a light cotton kimono often worn in the summer. Yukata are usually worn when visiting a matsuri (祭り), which is a summer festival. The kanji for the word yukata means, "bath" (浴) and "cloth" (衣) because yukata are worn as pajamas at ry kan, traditional Japanese-style inns. The style of a yukata is similar to that of a kimono, but a kimono can have multiple layers and the fabric is usually much thicker and heavier. While yukata are worn in casual situations in the summer, kimono are often reserved for special occasions, such as weddings or Coming of Age Day. (Reference All About Lesson 9 for more information on this holiday.)



Gengo Japanese S1

Pick Up Lines that Don't Work, and Ones that Do!

18

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	4
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	6
Cultural Insight	10

Formal Kanji

- アシュリー 光岡さんはよく浴衣を着ますか。
光岡れい いや、あまり、着ませんね。
本田大介 本田君は？よく、浴衣着る？
全然着ないね。
あ・・・でも旅館で時々、着るね。
おい、鈴木、その本、何？
鈴木すばる これ？ジャジャー！「ナンパテクニック101」
はい、アシュリーちゃん。これ、プレゼント。
アシュリー 本当ですか？ありがとうございます。
(Turns pages)
光岡れい うわー面白い！
「こんにちは。お嬢さん、お茶をしませんか。」
ふるーい！！成功しないよ。(Laughs)
本田大介 「ねえ、お茶しない？」「ねえ、一人？」「今、暇？」
これは、まあまあ。
光岡れい 「ここ、よく来る？」・・・これは、自然。
アシュリー たくさん、ありますね。
皆さんは、よくナンパをしますか。
光岡れい しませんよ。
本田大介 僕もしない。
鈴木すばる 俺は・・・よくする。
光岡れい&本田 こそ！？
大介
鈴木すばる うそだよ。

Formal Kana

- アシュリー みつおかさんはよくゆかたをきますか。
みつおかれい いや、あまり、きませんね。
ほんだだいすけ ほんだくんは？よく、ゆかたきる？
ぜんぜんきないね。
あ・・・でもりよかんでときどき、きるね。
おい、すずき、そのほん、なに？
すずきすばる これ？ジャジャー！「ナンパテクニック101」
はい、アシュリーちゃん。これ、プレゼント。
アシュリー ほんとうですか？ありがとうございます。

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

(Turns pages)
みつおかれい うわーおもしろい！
「こんにちは。おじょうさん、おちゃをしませんか。」
ふるーい！！せいこうしないよ。(Laughs)
ほんだだいすけ 「ねえ、おちゃしない？」 「ねえ、ひとり？」 「いま、ひま？」
これは、まあまあ。
みつおかれい 「ここ、よくくる？」・・・これは、しぜん。
アシュリー たくさん、ありますね。
みなさんは、よくナンパをしますか。
みつおかれい しませんよ。
ほんだだいすけ ぼくもしない。
すずきすばる おれは・・・よくする。
みつおかれい& うそ！？
ほんだだいすけ
すずきすばる うそだよ。

Formal Romanization

Ashur Mitsuoka-san wa yoku yukata o kimasuka.
Mitsuoka Rei Iya, amari, kimasen ne.
Honda Daisuke Honda-kun wa? Yoku, yukata kiru?
Zenzen kinai ne.
A... demo ryokan de tokidoki, kiru ne.
Oi, Suzuki, sono hon, nani?
Suzuki Subaru Kore? Jaj n!(Nanpa tekunikku 101)
hai, Ashur-chan. Kore, purezento.
Ashur Hont desu ka? Arigat gozaimasu.
(Turns pages)
Mitsuoka Rei Uw omoshiroi!
(Kon'nichiwa. O-j -san, o-cha o shimasen ka.)
Fur i!! Seik shinai yo.(Laughs)
Honda Daisuke (Nee, o-cha shinai?)(Nee, hitori?)(Ima, hima?)
Kore wa, m m .
Mitsuoka Rei (koko, yoku kuru?)... Kore wa, shizen.
Ashur Takusan, arimasu ne.
mina-san wa, yoku nanpa o shimasu ka.
Mitsuoka Rei Shimasen yo.
Honda Daisuke Boku mo shinai.
Suzuki Subaru Ore wa... yoku suru.

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Mitsuoka Rei & Honda Daisuke: Uso!?
Suzuki Subaru: Uso da yo.

English

Ashley: Mitsuoka-san, do you often wear yukata?
Rei Mitsuoka: No, I don't usually wear them.
Daisuke Honda: How about you, Honda-kun? Do you often wear yukata?
Daisuke Honda: I never do.
Subaru Suzuki: Oh...but I sometimes wear them at Japanese-style inns.
Ashley: Hey, Suzuki, what's that book you have?
(Turns pages)
Rei Mitsuoka: This? Taa-daaa! "Techniques for Getting a Date 101."
Rei Mitsuoka: Here, Ashley-chan. A present for you.
Ashley: Really? Thank you!
Rei Mitsuoka: Whoa, these are funny!
Daisuke Honda: "Hello. Would you like to go out for tea, young lady?"
Daisuke Honda: That's so old! You won't succeed with that one. (Laughs)
Daisuke Honda: "Want to get something to drink?" "Are you alone?" "Are you free now?"
Rei Mitsuoka: These are okay.
Ashley: "Do you come here often?" This one's natural.
Ashley: There are a lot of them!
Rei Mitsuoka: Do you all often pick up girls or guys?
Daisuke Honda: No, I don't.
Subaru Suzuki: Me neither.
Rei Mitsuoka & Daisuke Honda: I do...a lot.
Subaru Suzuki: No way!
Subaru Suzuki: Just kidding.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
あまり	あまり	amari	not very
全然	ぜんぜん	zenzen	not... at all (adverb)
旅館	りょかん	ryokan	Japanese style inn



本	ほん	hon	book
ナンパ	ナンパ	nanpa	to hit on, to pick up
お嬢さん	おじょうさん	o-j -san	young lady, daughter
お茶	おちゃ	o-cha	tea
まあまあ	まあまあ	m m	so-so
ここ	ここ	koko	here
来る	くる	kuru	to come; V3
プレゼント	プレゼント	purezento	present
テクニック	テクニック	tekunikku	technique
よく	よく	yoku	often
自然	しぜん	shizen	natural ; Adj(na)
着る	きる	kiru	to wear, to put on; V2
面白い	おもしろい	omoshiroi	funny, interesting, amusing; Adj(i)
古い	ふるい	furui	old (not person); Adj(i)
する	する	suru	to do ; V3
成功	せいこう	seik	success

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

私はお酒があまり好きじゃない。

全然わかりません。

近くに旅館がありますか。

この本はいくらですか。

私は、全然ナンパをしません。

お嬢さんのお名前は何ですか。

このお茶は熱い。

ここのすしは、まあまあです。

ここは禁煙です。

電車は何時に来ますか。

これはプレゼントです。どうぞ。

私は、バスケットボールのテクニックがありません。

よく音楽をききますか？

これは、自然な日本語ですか。

私は、着物をよく着る。

ピーターは面白いです。

古い歌が大好きです。

明日、何をしますか。

I don't really like alcohol.

I have no idea.

Is there a Japanese style inn nearby?

How much is this book?

I don't pick up girls at all.

What's your daughter's name?

This tea is hot.

The sushi here is so-so.

This place is no smoking.

What time will the train come?

This is a present. Here you are.

I don't have any techniques for playing basketball.

Do you listen to music a lot?

Is this natural Japanese?

I often wear kimono.

Peter is funny.

I love old songs.

What are you going to do tomorrow?



今日のイベントは大成功でした。

Today's event was a big success.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #18 - How Often Will These Japanese Pick-Up Lines Work for You?

光岡さんはよく浴衣を着ますか。

Mitsuoka-san wa yoku yukata o kimasu ka.

"Mitsuoka-san, do you often wear yukata?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn about Class 2 and Class 3 verbs

Learn various adverbs of frequency

Learn how to invite someone to do something with a negative question

Class 2 and Class 3 Verbs

In Lesson 14, we introduced the concept of the dictionary form of a verb (like iku/行く) as opposed to the masu form of a verb (like ikimasu/いきます). There are three classes of Japanese verbs: Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 verbs. In this lesson, we will look at Class 2 and Class 3 verbs.

Three Verb Inflection Patterns

How can you tell which class a verb belongs to?

1. When masu is preceded by -i **Class 1 verb**
2. When masu is preceded by -e or a one syllable sound **Class 2 verb**
3. kimasu ("to come"), shimasu ("to do") **Class 3 verb or irregular verb**

Class 2 Verbs

	Informal		Formal	
	Affirmative (dictionary)	Negative (nai form)	Affirmative (masu form)	Negative

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

To wear	着る kuru	着ない kinai	着ます kimasu	着ません kimasen
To see	見る miru	見ない minai	見ます mimasu	見ません mimasen
To eat	食べる taberu	食べない tabenai	食べます tabemasu	食べません tabemasen
To exist (animate)	いる iru	いない inai	います imasu	いません imasen
rule	-る -ru	Drop -ru, add -nai	Drop -ru, add -masu	Drop -masu, add -masen

Let's compare formal and informal speech in the following examples.

I eat meat.

Informal speech: 私は肉を食べる。(Watashi wa niku o taberu.)

Formal speech: 私は肉を食べます。(Watashi wa niku o tabemasu.)

I don't eat meat.

Informal speech: 私は肉を食べない。(Watashi wa niku o tabenai.)

Formal speech: 私は肉を食べません。(Watashi wa niku o tabemasen.)

Examples from the dialog:

1. アシュリー: 光岡さんはよく浴衣を着ますか。
Ashur : Mitsuoka-san wa yoku yukata o kimasu ka.
Ashley: "Mitsuoka-san, do you often wear yukata?"
2. 光岡れい: いや、あまり、着ませんね。
Mitsuoka Rei: Iya, amari, kimasen ne.
Rei Mitsuoka: "No, I don't usually wear them."

Class 3 Verbs

There are only two Class 3 verbs in Japanese, and they are both exceptions to the normal conjugation rules. The following table shows you how to create the negative of the informal and formal forms.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

	Informal		Formal	
	Affirmative (dictionary)	Negative (nai form)	Affirmative (masu form)	Negative
To wear	する suru	しない shinai	します shimasu	しません shimasen
To see	来る kuru	来ない konai	来ます kimasu	来ません kimasen

Let's compare formal and informal speech in the following example.

Formal	Informal	Translation
勉強をします。 Benky o shimasu.	勉強をする。 Benky o suru.	"I study."
勉強をしません。 Benky o shimasen.	勉強をしない。 Benky o shinai.	"I don't study."
ここによく来ます。 Koko ni yoku kimasu.	ここによく来る。 Koko ni yoku kuru.	"I often come here."
ここにぜんぜん来ません。 Koko ni zenzen kimasen.	ここにぜんぜん来ない。 Koko ni zenzen konai.	"I never come here."

Example:

アシュリー: 皆さんは、よくナンパをしますか。
Ashur: Mina-san wa, yoku nanpa o shimasu ka.
Ashley: "Do you all often pick up girls or guys?"

Adverbs of Frequency - How Often?

Being able to talk about how often you do or don't do something is an important skill in Japanese. Let's take a look at some common adverbs of frequency:

よく yoku	"often"	(私は)よく肉を食べます。 (Watashi wa) yoku niku o tabemasu.
ときどき tokidoki	"sometimes"	ときどき肉を食べます。 Tokidoki niku o tabemasu.
あまり amari	"not often" (used with negative verb)	あまり肉を食べません。 Amari niku o tabemasen.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

ぜんぜん zenzen	"never" (used with negative verb)	ぜんぜん肉を食べません。 Zenzen niku o tabemasen.
----------------	-----------------------------------	--

Examples from the dialogue:

1. アシュリー:光岡さんはよく浴衣を着ますか。
Ashur : Mitsuoka-san wa **yoku** yukata o kimasu ka.
Ashley: "Mitsuoka-san, do you **often** wear yukata?"
2. 光岡れい:いや、あまり、着ませんね。本田君は？よく、浴衣着る？
Mitsuoka Rei: Iya, **amari**, kimasen ne. Honda-kun wa? Yoku, yukata kiru?
Rei Mitsuoka: "No, I **don't usually** wear them. How about you, Honda-kun? Do you often wear yukata?"
3. 本田大介:全然着ないね。あ・・・でも旅館で時々、着るね。
Honda Daisuke: **Zenzen** kinai ne. A... demo ryokan de tokidoki, kiru ne.
Daisuke Honda: "I **never** do. Oh...but I sometimes wear them at Japanese-style inns."

Inviting Someone to Do Something

In the dialogue, the characters look through the book of pick-up lines. Some of these are to be used to invite someone to do something. You can use the negative form of a verb as a question (with rising intonation) to invite someone to do something.

Informal:

Negative Form	Said with Rising Intonation	Sentence	Translation
しない shinai	しない？* shinai?	お茶をしない？ O-cha o shinai?	"Wanna go get some tea?"**
見ない minai	見ない？ minai?	映画を見ない？ Eiga o minai?	"Wanna see a movie?"

* Note that using ka (か) after the informal negative, as in shinai ka (しないか), is an example of male speech.

** O-cha o suru (お茶をする) is a common expression that literally means "go out for tea," but these days it doesn't always necessarily refer to getting tea. In most cases, it refers to going to a cafe or coffee shop and chatting over a drink such as coffee, tea, etc.

Formal:



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Negative Form	Said with Rising Intonation	Sentence	Translation
しません shimasen	しませんか? (ka can be omitted) shimasen ka?	お茶をしませんか? ? O-cha o shimasen ka?	"Would you like to go get some tea?"
見ません mimasen	見ませんか? (ka can be omitted) mimasen ka?	映画を見ませんか? ? Eiga o mimasen ka?	"Would you like to see a movie?"

Cultural Insight

Nanpa

In the dialogue, Ashley is given a book called Nanpa Technique 101 (Techniques for Getting a Date 101) as a gag gift. Nanpa is a word that refers to "picking up" or "hitting on" a member of the opposite sex, but in many cases it refers to the act of guys picking up girls. Even though this is a Japanese word, it is often written out using katakana.



Gengo Japanese S1

The Top Six Places You Have to See When You're in Japan

19

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	10

Formal Kanji

駅のアナウンス 次は品川ー。品川ー。
アシュリー 皆さん、今日は、ありがとうございました。
鈴木すばる 楽しかった？
アシュリー はい、とても楽しかったです。
花火はとてもきれいでした。
お弁当もおいしかったです。
ごちそう様でした。

鈴木すばる 今週、また、飲まない？
アシュリー あー、残念ですが、今週、会社に行きません。
ちょっと観光します。

本田大介 へえー。どこに行くの。
アシュリー 築地と、浅草と、秋葉原と、富士山と鎌倉と、日光に行きます。
光岡れい ええ？私の出身、日光！
両親の家が日光にあります。
アシュリーさん、うちに泊まらない？

アシュリー ええ？いいですか。
光岡れい うん、大丈夫。じゃ、あとで、連絡しますね。
本田大介 よかったですね、アシュリーさん。
駅のアナウンス 品川ー。品川ー。
アシュリー じゃあ、皆さん、また。

Formal Kana

えきのアナウンス つぎはしながわー。しながわー。
ス
アシュリー みなさん、きょうは、ありがとうございました。
すずきすばる たのしかった？
アシュリー はい、とてもたのしかったです。
はなびはとてもきれいでした。
おべんとうもおいしかったです。
ごちそうさまでした。

すずきすばる こんしゅう、また、のまない？
アシュリー あー、ざんねんですが、こんしゅう、かいしゃにいきません。
ちょっとかんこうします。

ほんだだいすけ へえー。どこに行くの。
アシュリー つきじと、あさくさと、あきはばらと、ふじさんとかまくらと、

みつおかれい につこうにいきます。
ええ？わたしのしゅっしん、につこう！
りょうしんのいえがにつこうにあります。
アシュリーさん、うちにとまらない？
アシュリー ええ？いいですか。
みつおかれい うん、だいじょうぶ。じゃ、あとで、れんらくしますね。
ほんだだいすけ よかったですね、アシュリーさん。
えきのアナウン しながわー。しながわー。
ス
アシュリー じゃあ、みなさん、また。

Formal Romanization

Eki no anaunsu Tsugi wa Shinagaw . Shinagaw .
Ashur Mina-san, ky wa, arigat gozaimashita.
Suzuki Subaru Tanoshikatta?
Ashur Hai, totemo tanoshikatta desu.
Hanabi wa totemo kirei deshita.
O-bent mo oishikatta desu.
Gochis -sama deshita.
Suzuki Subaru Konsh , mata, nomanai?
ashur , zannen desu ga, konsh , kaisha ni ikimasen.
Chotto kank shimasu.
Honda Daisuke H . Doko ni iku no.
Ashur Tsukiji to, Asakusa to, Akihabara to, Fujisan to Kamakura to,
Nikk ni ikimasu.
Mitsuoka Rei ? Watashi no shusshin, Nikk !
Ry shin no ie ga Nikk ni arimasu.
Ashur -san, uchi ni tomaranai?
Ashur ? li desu ka.
Mitsuoka Rei Un, daij bu. Ja, ato de, renraku shimasu ne.
Honda Daisuke Yokatta desu ne, Ashur -san.
Eki no anaunsu Shinagaw . Shinagaw .
Ashur J , mina-san, mata.

English

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Station Next is Shinagawa...Shinagawa...
Announcement
Ashley Everyone, thank you so much for everything today.
Subaru Suzuki Did you have fun?
Ashley Yes, I had a lot of fun!
The fireworks were really pretty.
The bento was good too.
Thanks for the delicious meal.
Subaru Suzuki Want to go drinking again this week?
Ashley Ohh, unfortunately I won't be going to work this week.
I'm going to do a little sightseeing.
Daisuki Honda Really? Where are you going?
Ashley I'm going to Tsukiji, Asakusa, Akihabara, Mt. Fuji, Kamakura, and Nikko.
Rei Mitsuoka Oh? My hometown is Nikko!
My parents' house is in Nikko.
Ashley-san, why don't you stay at their house?
Ashley Eh? Is it okay?
Rei Mitsuoka Sure, it's okay! I'll contact you later, okay?
Daisuke Honda Lucky you, Ashley!
Station Shinagawa...Shinagawa...
Announcement
Ashley Okay, well, see you later everyone!

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
きれい	きれい	kirei	beautiful;Adj(na)
今週	こんしゅう	konsh	this week
飲む	のむ	nomu	to drink;V1
残念	ざんねん	zannen	a shame, regrettable
ちょっと	ちょっと	chotto	a bit
うち	うち	uchi	house, home
泊まる	とまる	tomaru	to stay;V1
連絡	れんらく	renraku	contact, connect
弁当	べんとう	bent	boxed lunch
楽しい	たのしい	tanoshii	fun, enjoyable ; Adj(i)
会社	かいしゃ	kaisha	company, corporation
観光	かんこう	kank	sightseeing

両親	りょうしん	ry shin	parents
あとで	あとで	ato de	later
また	また	mata	again
家	いえ	ie	house

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

このイヤリングはきれいです。 今週の日曜日、暇ですか。 私は、朝、オレンジジュースを飲む。 残念ですね。 ちょっと、すみません。 家（うち）のとなりに大きい家（いえ）がある。 今日は、どこに泊まりますか。 連絡をおねがいします。 コンビニのお弁当はおいしいです。	These earrings are beautiful. Are you free this Sunday? I drink orange juice in the morning. That's too bad. Excuse me for a minute. There's a big house next to our home.
鈴木さんは、楽しい人です。 トヨタは日本の会社です。 明日、観光する。 両親の出身は成田です。 あとでコンビニに行きます。 じゃ、また。 今、家を出ました。	Where are you staying today? Please contact me. The boxed lunches sold at convenience stores are good. Mr. Suzuki is a fun person. Toyota is a Japanese company. I'll do some sightseeing tomorrow. My parents are from Narita. I'll go to the convenience store later. See you later. I've just left my house.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #19 - The Top Six Places You Have to See When You're in Japan

とても楽しかったです。

Totemo tanoshikatta desu.

"I had a lot of fun!"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to make the past tense of adjectives and na-adjectives

Learn about Class 1 verbs

Review how to invite someone to do something using a negative question

Past Tense of Adjectives

As we explained in Lesson 16, there are two different types of adjectives: i-adjectives, and na-adjectives. How we conjugate these adjectives depends on the type. In this lesson, we will learn how to create the past tense of both types of adjectives ("It was ").

I-Adjectives

How do we create the informal past form?

Step 1: Drop the final i (い)

Step 2: Add katta (かった)

How do we create the formal past form?

Step 1: Drop the final i (い)

Step 2: Add katta (かった)

Step 3: Add desu (です)

English	i-adjective	Drop final i (い)	Informal Past Add katta (かった)	Formal Past Add katta desu (です)
fun	たのしい tanoshii	たのし- tanoshi-	たのしかった tanoshikatta	たのしかったです tanoshikatta desu
delicious	おいしい oishii	おいし- oishi-	おいしかった oishikatta	おいしかったです oishikatta desu

Examples:

- アシュリー: とても楽しかったです。
Ashur : Totemo tanoshikatta desu.
Ashley: "I had a lot of fun!" (Literally, "It was a lot of fun.")
- アシュリー: お弁当もおいしかったです。
Ashur : O-bent mo oishikatta desu.
Ashley: "The bento was good too."

Note that the adjective ii (いい), meaning "good" or "well," is an exception to this rule.

Non-past	Past
いい ii	よかったです yokatta desu



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

For all of the above examples, please remember that desu (です) only serves to make the phrase polite and is not needed when speaking informal Japanese.

Example:

本田大介:よかったですね、アシュリーさん。

Honda Daisuke: Yokatta desu ne, Ashur -san.

Daisuke Honda: "Lucky you, Ashley!" (Literally, "That's great, Ashley!")

Na-Adjectives

How do we create the informal past form?

Add datta (だった) to the dictionary form

How do we create the formal past form?

Add deshita (でした) to the dictionary form

English	na-adjective	Informal Past Add datta (だった)	Formal Past Add deshita (でした)
beautiful	きれい kirei	きれいだった kirei datta	きれいでした kirei deshita
tough	大変 taihen	大変だった taihen datta	大変でした taihen deshita

Example:

アシュリー: 花火はとてもきれいでした。

Ashur : Hanabi wa totemo kirei deshita.

Ashley: "The fireworks were really pretty."

Class 1 Verbs

In the last lesson, we introduced Class 2 and Class 3 verbs and showed you how to make the dictionary form from the masu form. Now, we will take a look at Class 1 verbs.

Three Verb Inflection Patterns

How can you tell which class a verb belongs to?

1. When masu is preceded by -i **Class 1 verb**
2. When masu is preceded by -e or a one syllable sound **Class 2 verb**
3. kimasu ("to come"), shimasu ("to do") **Class 3 verb or irregular verb**

One example we saw in the dialogue was ikimasu (いきます), which means "to go." The following table shows you how to create the negative of the informal and formal forms.

	Affirmative		Negative	Rule
Formal	いきます ikimasu		いきません ikimasen	Drop -masu, add -masen
Informal	いく iku		いかない ikanai	(1) Drop the final -u sound (2) Add -anai

Let's also look at the verb nomimasu (のみます), which means "to drink."

	Affirmative		Negative	Rule
Formal	のみます nomimasu		のみません nomimasen	Drop -masu, add -masen
Informal	のむ nomu		のまない nomanai	(1) Drop the final -u sound (2) Add -anai

Examples:

1. 鈴木すばる:今週、また、飲まない?
Suzuki Subaru: Konsh , mata, nomanai?
Subaru Suzuki: "Want to go drinking again this week?"
2. アシュリー:あー、残念ですが、今週、会社に行きません。
Ashur : A, zan'nen desu ga, konsh , kaisha ni ikimasen.
Ashley: "Ohh, unfortunately I won't be going to work this week."

Conjugation: Dictionary Form masu form informal negative form

English	Dictionary Form	Masu Form	Plain Negative Form
"to write"	書く kaku	書きます kakimasu	書かない kakanai
"to speak"	話す hanasu	話します hanashimasu	話さない hanasanai
"to wait"	待つ matsu	待ちます machimasu	待たない matanai
"to die"	死ぬ shinu	死にます shinimasu	死なない shinanai



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

"to drink"	飲む nomu	飲みます nomimasu	飲まない nomanai
"to make"	作る tsukuru	作ります tsukurimasu	作らない tsukuranai
"to swim"	泳ぐ oyogu	泳ぎます oyogimasu	泳がない oyoganai
"to invite"	呼ぶ yobu	呼びます yobimasu	呼ばない yobanai

Reviewing How to Invite Someone to Do Something

We first introduced how to invite someone to do something with a negative question in Lesson 18. We saw more examples of this structure in this dialogue, so let's take a look at this topic again. To turn a statement into an invitation, remember that we use the negative form of a verb and turn it into a question using the question particle ka (か) when the verb is formal or by using rising intonation if the verb is informal.

Let's take a look at the examples from this dialogue:

1. 鈴木すばる: 今週、また、飲まない? (rising intonation)
Suzuki Subaru: Konsh , mata, nomanai?
Subaru Suzuki: "Want to go drinking again this week?"
2. 光岡れい: アシュリーさん、うちに泊まらない? (rising intonation)
Mitsuoka Rei: Ashur -san, uchi ni tomaranai?
Rei Mitsuoka: "Ashley-san, why don't you stay at their house?"

Vocab Usage: Thanks for the meal!

ごちそう様でした。 [Gochis -sama deshita] "Thanks for the meal". After a meal, it ' s customary to say Gochis -sama deshita, which is like saying “ thank you for the meal ” . You can say this to the person who has made or paid for the meal, as well as to the staff at a restaurant.

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some relative time expressions:

今日 - ky - today

今週 - konsh - this week

For more detailed information on relative time expressions, please check the following



Appendix lesson: Relative Time Expressions (Appendix #8).

Cultural Insight

Bent

Bent , or o-bent (which were also mentioned in All About Japanese Lesson 7 on Japanese cuisine), are "boxed lunches" or meals served in a box that are either prepared at home or bought at restaurants and convenience stores. A typical bent includes rice, fish or meat, and some pickled vegetables as a side dish, but it is possible to find a wide variety of bent . You can find reasonably-priced bent at convenience stores as well as high-class, gourmet bent at department stores or restaurants. One special type of bent that is sold exclusively at train stations and on trains is the ekiben (駅弁) which combines the word for train station, eki (駅) and the first part of the word bent (弁当). Definitely try a bent if you get the chance!



Gengo Japanese S1

You Had Better Ask This Question Before You Do This in Japan

20

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	9

Formal Kanji

(江戸東京博物館)

アシュリー あの、すみません、この電車は両国に行きますか。
おばさん え？両国？行かないよ。
 でも、あの総武線は行く。
アシュリー そうぶせ？どれですか。
おばさん あれ。あの、黄色い電車。わかる？
アシュリー あー、はい。わかりました。
 ありがとうございました。

係員 ようこそ、江戸東京博物館へ。
アシュリー 大人一枚、お願いします。
係員 600円です。
 今日、一時からお茶会があります。
 出席しませんか。無料です。

アシュリー むりょう？むりょうは。。。何ですか。
係員 ただです。ゼロ円です。
アシュリー じゃ、参加します。
 写真、大丈夫ですか。

係員 はい、大丈夫です。

(パシャ)

係員 お客様、フラッシュは駄目です。

Formal Kana

(えどとうきょうはくぶつかん)

アシュリー あの、すみません、このでんしゃはりょうごくにいきますか。
おばさん え？りょうごく？いけないよ。
 でも、あのそうぶせんはいく。
アシュリー そうぶせ？どれですか。
おばさん あれ。あの、きいろいでんしゃ。わかる？
アシュリー あー、はい。わかりました。
 ありがとうございました。

かかりいん ようこそ、えどとうきょうはくぶつかんへ。
アシュリー おとないちまい、おねがいします。
かかりいん ろっぴゃくえんです。

アシュリー	きょう、いちじからおちゃかいがあります。
かかりいん	しゅっせきしませんか。むりょうです。
アシュリー	むりょう?むりょうは。。。なんですか。
	ただです。ゼロえんです。
	じゃ、さんかします。
かかりいん	しゃしん、だいじょうぶですか。
(パシャ)	はい、だいじょうぶです。
かかりいん	おきゃくさま、フラッシュはだめです。

Formal Romanization

(Edo T ky Hakubutsukan)

Ashur Ano, sumimasen, kono densha wa Ry goku ni ikimasu ka.

Oba-san E? Ry goku? Ikanai yo.

Demo, ano S bu-sen wa iku.

Ashur S buse? Dore desu ka.

Oba-san Are. Ano, kiroi densha. Wakaru?

Ashur , hai. Wakarimashita.

Arigat gozaimashita.

Kakari-in Y koso, Edo T ky Hakubutsukan e.

Ashur Otona ichi-mai, onegai shimasu.

Kakari-in Roppyaku-en desu.

Ky , ichi-ji kara o-chakai ga arimasu.

Shusseki shimasen ka. Mury desu.

Ashur Mury ? Mury wa... nan desu ka.

Kakari-in Tada desu. Zero-en desu.

Ashur Ja, sanku shimasu.

Shashin, daij bu desu ka.

Kakari-in Hai, daij bu desu.

(pasha)

Kakari-in O-kyaku-sama, furasshu wa dame desu.

English

(At Edo Tokyo Museum)



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Ashley Um, excuse me; does this train go to Ryogoku?
Old lady Huh? Ryogoku? No, it doesn't.
But that Sobu-sen does.
Ashley Sobuse? Which one?
Old lady That one. That yellow train. Do you understand?
Ashley Oh, yes. I understand.
Thank you very much!

Clerk Welcome to the Edo Tokyo Museum.
Ashley One adult ticket please.
Clerk It's 600 yen.
Today at one, there's a tea ceremony.
Would you like to participate? It's "mury ."
Ashley "Mury ?" What's "mury ?"
Clerk It's free. Zero yen.
Ashley Okay then, I'll participate.
Is it okay to take pictures?
Clerk Yes, it's okay.
(snap)
Clerk Ma'am, you can't use flash.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
博物館	はくぶつかん	hakubutsukan	museum
電車	でんしゃ	densha	train
総武線	そうぶせん	S bu-sen	Sobu line
出席	しゅっせき	shusseki	attendance, presence
ただ	ただ	tada	free
参加	さんか	sanka	participation
写真	しゃしん	shashin	photograph, picture
フラッシュ	フラッシュ	furasshu	flash
お茶会	おちゃかい	o-cha kai	tea ceremony
黄色い	きいろい	kiroi	yellow;Adj (i)
無料	むりょう	mury	free, no charge
江戸	えど	Edo	old name of Tokyo

Vocabulary Sample Sentences



明日、博物館に行きます。 電車が好きです。 総武線はどれですか。 私は、明日のミーティングに出席しません。 お茶はただです。でも、コーヒーは100円です。 東京マラソンに参加します。 これは、私の子供の写真です。 このカメラはフラッシュがありません。 お茶会に参加します。 あの黄色い花の名前は、何ですか。	I'm going to a museum tomorrow. I love trains. Which line is the Sobu line? I'm not going to attend the meeting tomorrow. Tea is free, but the coffee is 100yen. I'm going to participate in the Tokyo Marathon. This is a picture of my child. This camera doesn't have a flash. I'm going to participate in a tea ceremony. What's the name of that yellow flower over there?
これは無料ですか。 江戸は東京の古い名前です。	Is this free? Edo is the old name of Tokyo.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #20 - You Had Better Ask This Question Before You Do This in Japan

あの、すみません、この電車は両国に行きますか。

Ano, sumimasen, kono densha wa Ryogoku ni ikimasu ka.

"Um, excuse me, does this train go to Ryogoku?"

In this lesson, you will:

Review Class 1 verbs

Learn how to ask about transportation

Review *daij bu* and *dame*

Review of Class 1 verbs

Remember that you can identify verbs (in their masu form) as Class 1 verbs when the masu is preceded by *-i*.

Let's look at the example of *ikimasu* (いきます) again:

Formal	いきます ikimasu		いきません ikimasen	Drop -masu, add -masen
--------	-----------------	--	-------------------	------------------------

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Informal	いく iku		いかない ikanai	(1) Drop the final -u sound (2) Add -anai
----------	-----------	--	----------------	--

In the dialogue, we also had the verb *wakarimasu*, another example of a Class 1 verb.

Formal	わかります wakarimasu		わかりません wakarimasen	Drop -masu, add -masen
Informal	わかる wakaru		わからない wakaranai	(1) Drop the final -u sound (2) Add -anai

Examples:

1. おばさん: あれ。あの、黄色い電車。わかる？
Oba-san: Are. Ano, kiroi densha. Wakaru?
Old lady: "That one. That yellow train. Do you understand?"
2. アシュリー: あー、はい。わかりました。
Ashur: , hai. Wakarimashita.
Ashley: "Oh, yes. I understand."

Asking About Transportation

In the dialogue, Ashley asked a stranger if a train was going to Ryogoku, where she wanted to go. Let's see how we can ask these kinds of useful transportation questions:

Kono [transportation] wa [place] e/ni ikimasu ka?

"This"	Transportation	Topic Particle	Place	Direction Particle	"to go" + Question	Translation
この Kono	電車 densha	は wa	東京 T ky	に ni	行きますか ikimasu ka	"Does this train go to Tokyo?"
この Kono	バス basu	は wa	駅 eki	に ni	行きますか ikimasu ka	"Does this bus go to the station?"

Example:

アシュリー:あの、すみません、この電車は両国に行きますか。
Ashur: Ano, sumimasen, kono densha wa ryogoku ni ikimasu ka.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Ashley: "Um, excuse me; does this train go to Ryogoku?"

Reviewing Daij bu/Dame

We first introduced daij bu (大丈夫) and dame (だめ) in Lesson 8. Daij bu means, "it's okay" or "it's all right," while dame is the opposite and means "not okay" or "not all right." What is being referred to as "okay" or "not okay" depends on context.

In this dialogue, daij bu (大丈夫) and dame (だめ) refer to the acts of taking a picture and using the camera flash, respectively.

Statement:

Topic	Topic Particle	okay/ not okay	Copula
[something]	は wa	大丈夫 / だめ daij bu / dame	です desu

Question:

Topic	Topic Particle	okay/ not okay	Copula	Question Particle
[something]	は wa	大丈夫 / だめ daij bu / dame	です desu	か ka

Examples:

1. アシュリー: 写真、大丈夫ですか。
Ashur: Shashin, daij bu desu ka.
Ashley: "Is it okay to take pictures?" (Literally, "Are pictures okay?")
2. 係員: はい、大丈夫です。
Kakari'in: Hai, daij bu desu.
Clerk: "Yes, it's okay."
3. 係員: お客様、フラッシュは駄目です。
Kakari'in: O-kyaku-sama, furasshu wa dame desu.
Clerk: "Ma'am, you can't use flash." (Literally, "Flash is not okay.")

Vocabulary Building: Color and Transportation Vocabulary

In the dialogue, there was a reference to a kiroi densha (黄色い電車), or a "yellow train."



Let's take a look at more color-related and transportation vocabulary.

Color Vocabulary

赤い akai	red
黄色い kiiroi	yellow
青い aoi	blue
茶色い chairoi	brown
白い shiroi	white
黒い kuroi	black

Transportation Vocabulary

電車 densha	train
バス basu	bus
地下鉄 chikatetsu	subway, tube
飛行機 hik ki	airplane
タクシー takush	taxi
車 kuruma	car



Cultural Insight

[Edo Tokyo Museum and the National Sports Arena](#)

Edo Tokyo Museum, or Edo Tokyo Hakubutsukan (江戸東京博物館) in Japanese, is a museum dedicated to the history of Tokyo. Edo is the former name of Tokyo that was used until 1868 when the Tokugawa shogunate came to an end. At this museum, there are numerous exhibitions where you can see how Tokyo has evolved throughout the ages, and free tours are available in multiple languages (reservations required in advance). Edo Tokyo Museum is located in Ryogoku, where the National Sports Arena, or Kokugikan (国技館) is also located. Many sumo matches are held at the National Sports Arena. If you are interested in seeing a sumo match, it's important to note that they are only held during odd-numbered months, and out of those months, matches are only held at the National Sports Arena in January, May, and September. If you are interested in reserving seats or would like to go on the weekend, it is probably a good idea to buy tickets in advance.



Gengo Japanese S1

Get the Best Table in the Restaurant and Have the Best Dish in Town

21

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	8

Formal Kanji

店員	いらっしゃいませ。何名様ですか。
アシユリー	一人です。
店員	おタバコは？
アシユリー	すいません。
店員	では、こちらへどうぞ。
アシユリー	あ、すみません。あそこに座りたいです。 いいですか。
店員	はい。でも、喫煙席ですよ。 大丈夫ですか。
アシユリー	はい、大丈夫です。
店員	ご注文は。
アシユリー	辛いものが食べたいです。 お勧めは何ですか。
店員	野菜カレー、タイラーメン、唐辛子そばです。
アシユリー	一番人気はどれですか。
店員	野菜カレーです。
アシユリー	じゃ、それをください。

Formal Kana

てんいん	いらっしゃいませ。なんめいさまですか。
アシユリー	ひとりです。
てんいん	おタバコは？
アシユリー	すいません。
てんいん	では、こちらへどうぞ。
アシユリー	あ、すみません。あそこにすわりたいです。 いいですか。
てんいん	はい。でも、きつえんせきですよ。 だいじょうぶですか。
アシユリー	はい、だいじょうぶです。
てんいん	ごちゅうもんは。
アシユリー	からいものがたべたいです。 おすすめはなんですか。
てんいん	やさいカレー、タイラーメン、とうがらしそばです。

アシュリー いちばんにんきはどれですか。
てんいん やさいカレーです。
アシュリー じゃ、それをください。

Formal Romanization

Ten'in Irasshaimase. Nan-mei-sama desu ka.
Ashur Hitori desu.
Ten'in O-tabako wa?
Ashur Suimasen.
Ten'in Dewa, kochira e d zo.
Ashur A, sumimasen. Asoko ni suwaritai desu.
li desu ka.
Ten'in Hai. Demo, kitsuen seki desu yo.
Daij bu desu ka.
Ashur Hai, daij bu desu.

Ten'in Go-ch mon wa.
Ashur Karai mono ga tabetai desu.
O-susume wa nan desu ka.

Ten'in Yasai kar , Tai r men, t garashi soba desu.
Ashur Ichi-ban ninki wa dore desu ka.
Ten'in Yasai kar desu.
Ashur Ja, sore o kudasai.

English

Clerk Welcome. How many people?
Ashley One.
Clerk Will you be smoking?
Ashley No.
Clerk This way please.
Ashley Oh, excuse me. I'd like to sit over there.
Is that okay?
Clerk Yes, but it's in the smoking section.
Is that okay with you?
Ashley Yes, that's fine.



Clerk: May I take your order?
 Ashley: I'd like to eat something spicy.
 What's your recommendation?
 Clerk: The vegetable curry, Thai ramen, and chili soba.
 Ashley: Which one is most popular?
 Clerk: The vegetable curry.
 Ashley: Okay, then I'll have that.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
一人	ひとり	hitori	one person
すう	すう	s	to smoke, to inhale; V1
注文	ちゅうもん	ch mon	order
もの	もの	mono	thing
カレー	カレー	kar	curry
ラーメン	ラーメン	r men	ramen noodles
そば	そば	soba	soba (buckwheat noodles)
一番	いちばん	ichi-ban	best, first
人気	にんき	ninki	popular
どれ	どれ	dore	which (one)
たばこ	たばこ	tabako	cigarettes
唐辛子	とうがらし	t garashi	chili pepper
座る	すわる	suwaru	to sit ; V1
喫煙席	きつえんせき	kitsuen seki	smoking section
辛い	からい	karai	spicy, hot ; Adj (i)
食べる	たべる	taberu	to eat, to have ; V2
野菜	やさい	yasai	vegetable
タイ	タイ	Tai	Thailand

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

兄が、一人います。
 タバコをすいますか。
 お客様、ご注文は？
 甘いものが食べたいです。

I have an older brother.
 Do you smoke?
 Are you ready to order, sir/ma'am?
 I want to eat something sweet.



カレーが大好きです。	I love curry.
いいラーメン屋はありますか。	Are there any good ramen places?
そばが食べたいです。	I want to eat buckwheat noodles.
私はイクラの寿司が一番好きだ。	My favorite sushi is ikura (salted salmon roe).
日本のアニメは人気がある。	Japanese anime is very popular.
どれが好きですか。	Which one do you like?
たばこをよく吸いますか。	Do you often smoke?
唐辛子が嫌いです。	I don't like chili peppers.
禁煙席に座りたいです。	I'd like to sit in the non-smoking section.
喫煙席はありますか。	Is there a smoking section?
辛いものが大好きです。	I love spicy food.
朝ごはんを食べますか。	Do you eat breakfast?
それは野菜です。	That's a vegetable.
タイに行きたいです。	I want to go to Thailand.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #21 - Get the Best Table in the Restaurant and Have the Best Dish in Town

いらっしゃいませ。何名様ですか。

Irasshaimase. Nan-mei-sama desu ka.

"Welcome. How many people?"

In this lesson, you will:

- Learn how to express the desire to do something using *tai* (-たい)
- Learn some useful restaurant phrases
- Learn how to count people

Expressing the Desire to Do Something

In this dialogue, Ashley indicated where she wanted to sit and what she wanted to eat using *-tai* (-たい). To express our desire to do something, we attach *-tai* (-たい) to the stem of a verb. To make the phrase polite, we can add the copula *desu* (です) at the end.

[verb stem + tai + desu]

Masu Verb	Verb Stem	+tai (desu)	Translation
行きます ikimasu	行き- iki-	行きたい (です) ikitai (desu)	"I want to go..."

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

見ます mimasu	見- mi-	見たい (です) mitai (desu)	"I want to see..."
食べます tabemasu	食べ- tabe-	食べたい (です) tabetai (desu)	"I want to eat..."
座ります suwarimasu	座り- suwari-	座りたい (です) suwaritai (desu)	"I want to sit..."
します shimasu	し- shi-	したい (です) shitai (desu)	"I want to do..."

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: あ、すみません。あそこに座りたいです。
Ashur : A, sumimasen. Asoko ni suwaritai desu.
Ashley: "Oh, excuse me. I'd like to sit over there."
2. アシュリー: 辛いものが食べたいです。
Ashur : Karai mono ga tabetai desu.
Ashley: "I'd like to eat something spicy."

Other Examples:

1. 今年、日本に行きたいです。
Kotoshi, Nihon ni ikitai desu.
"I want to go to Japan this year."
2. あの映画を見たいです。
Ano eiga o mitai desu.
"I want to see that movie."

Useful Restaurant Phrases

In this dialogue, Ashley went to a restaurant by herself, where she asked and was asked many questions that are typically heard at restaurants.

何名様ですか？	Nan-mei-sama desu ka?	"How many people?"
---------	--------------------------	--------------------

When restaurant staff ask about the number of people in your party, they will use the counter mei (名), often followed by the honorific suffix sama (さま).

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

おタバコは？	O-tabako wa?	"Will you smoke?"
ご注文は？	Go-ch mon wa?	"Can I take your order?"
おすすめは？	O-susume wa?	"Do you have any recommendations?"

These three examples all end with the particle wa (は) to form a question, a construction we introduced in Lesson 4.

1. O-tabako wa (おタバコは？) is short for O-tabako wa suimasu ka? (おタバコは吸いますか?). Suimasu (吸います) is a verb that means "to smoke."
2. Go-ch mon (ご注文) means "order," and this phrase is short for Go-ch mon wa nan desu ka? (ご注文は何ですか.).
3. O-susume (おすすめ) means "recommendation," and this phrase is short for O-susume wa arimasu ka (おすすめはありますか?).

こちらどうぞ。	Kochira e d zo.	"This way please."
---------	-----------------	--------------------

Kochira (こちら) means "this way," and is followed by the direction particle e (へ). D zo (どうぞ) was covered in All About Japanese Lesson #5. This is a polite phrase used to guide someone somewhere. It is often heard at restaurants when the staff leads you to your table as well as in business situations when escorting someone.

じゃ、それをください。	Ja, sore o kudasai.	"I'll take that, please."
-------------	---------------------	---------------------------

When the restaurant staff tells you their recommendation, you can use this phrase to indicate that you would like to have that.

Counting People

To count people, we put nin (人), meaning "person," after the number. Note that the words for "one person" and "two people" are irregular.

This way of counting people is the standard way. It's different from the counter mei (名) that we saw in this lesson as well as in Lesson 8, which is a more polite term used to count people.

一人	hitori*	"one person"
二人	futari*	"two people"
三人	san-nin	"three people"
四人	yo-nin	"four people"



五人	go-nin	"five people"
六人	roku-nin	"six people"
七人	nana-nin shichi-nin	"seven people"
八人	hachi-nin	"eight people"
九人	kyu-nin ku-nin	"nine people"
十人	jū-nin	"ten people"
何人	nan-nin	"How many people...?"

*Irregular forms

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some another counter, nin (人), being used to count people. For more detailed information on this and other counters, please check the following Appendix lessons: Counters (Appendix #7).

Cultural Insight

Curry, Japanese Style

One thing you might be surprised to hear is that curry is very popular in Japan-Japanese curry, that is. The Japanese have taken curry and made it their own, and as a result, it is very different from authentic Indian curry. A typical Japanese curry uses meat, potatoes, carrots, and onions, although there are many different varieties of Japanese curry available. Coco Ichibanya (CoCo 一番屋) is a well-known chain restaurant that specializes in Japanese curry. They have an extensive menu with numerous varieties of curry and ten levels of spiciness to choose from. The name of the restaurant is also interesting, translating to "This place is the best," or "We are number one." Koko (ここ) means "here," and ichi-ban (一番) means "best," or "number one." With a name like that, you might just be tempted to try it!





Gengo Japanese S1

Find Out About the Place Japanese People Go To Have a Good Time

22

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	9

Formal Kanji

屋台の人1	いらっしゃい！お好み焼きいかがですか。
屋台の人2	お姉さん、かき氷、買わない？ 安くておいしいよ。
アシュリー	これ、なんですか。
屋台の人3	たい焼き。
アシュリー	魚ですか。
屋台の人3	違うよ。中はある。
アシュリー	はい？...中は何ですか？
屋台の人3	あんこ。甘い豆。 甘くておいしいよ。
アシュリー	これは、いくらですか。
屋台の人3	一つ、130円 三つ、300円
アシュリー	じゃ、一つください。
屋台の人3	はい、130円ね。
アシュリー	お釣りありますか。
屋台の人3	え？一万円？小銭、ない？
アシュリー	すみません。ありません。
屋台の人3	しょうがないなあ・・・。 はい、お釣り。九千八百七十円。

Formal Kana

やたいのひと1	いらっしゃい！おこのみやきいかがですか。
やたいのひと2	おねえさん、かきごおり、かわない？ やすくておいしいよ。
アシュリー	これ、なんですか。
やたいのひと3	たいやき。
アシュリー	さかなですか。
やたいのひと3	ちがうよ。なかはある。
アシュリー	はい？...なかはなんですか？
やたいのひと3	あんこ。あまいまめ。 あまくておいしいよ。
アシュリー	これは、いくらですか。
やたいのひと3	ひとつ、ひゃくさんじゅうえん みっつ、さんびゃくえん

アシュリー じゃ、ひとつください。
やたいのひと3 はい、ひゃくさんじゅうえんね。
アシュリー おつりありますか。
やたいのひと3 え？いちまんえん？こぜに、ない？
アシュリー すみません。ありません。
やたいのひと3 しょうがないなあ・・・。
はい、おつり。きゅうせんはっぴゃくななじゅうえん。

Formal Romanization

Yatai no hito1 Irasshai! Okonomiyaki ikaga desu ka.
Yatai no hito2 O-n -san, kakig ri, kawanai?
 Yasukute oishii yo.
Ashur Kore, nan desu ka.
Yatai no hito 3 Taiyaki.
Ashur Sakana desu ka.
Yatai no hito 3 Chigau yo. Naka wa an.
Ashur Hai?... Naka wa nan desu ka?
Yatai no hito 3 Anko. Amai mame.
 Amakute oishii yo.
Ashur Kore wa, ikura desu ka.
Yatai no hito 3 Hitotsu, hyaku sanj -en
 mittsu, san-byaku-en
Ashur Ja, hitotsu kudasai.
Yatai no hito3 Hai, hyaku sanj -en ne.
Ashur O-tsuru arimasu ka.
Yatai no hito3 E? Ichi-man-en? Kozeni, nai?
Ashur Sumimasen. Arimasen.
Yatai no hito3 Sh ganai n
 Hai, o-tsuru. Ky -sen ha-ppyaku nana-j -en.

English

Street vendor 1 Welcome! How about some okonomiyaki?
Street vendor 2 Young lady, would you like to buy some shaved ice?
 It's cheap and delicious!
Ashley What's this?

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Street vendor 3 It's taiyaki.
Ashley Is it fish?
Street vendor 3 No, there's "an" in the middle.
Ashley I'm sorry? There's what in the middle?
Street vendor 3 Anko. Sweet beans.
It's sweet and tastes great!
Ashley How much is it?
Street vendor 3 One for 130 yen,
or 3 for 300 yen.
Ashley Okay, I'll take one please.
Street vendor 3 That'll be 130 yen.
Ashley Do you have change?
Street vendor 3 Huh? 10,000 yen? You don't have any smaller change?
Ashley Sorry. I don't.
Street vendor 3 Guess it can't be helped...
Here's your change. 9,870 yen.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
お好み焼き	おこのみやき	okonomiyaki	Pancake cooked on a hot plate with meat, seafood and vegetables
違う	ちがう	chigau	to differ, to be different ; V1
豆	まめ	mame	beans, peas
一万	いちまん	ichi-man	ten thousand
小銭	こぜに	kozeni	small change
しょうがない	しょうがない	sh ga nai	can't be helped; Adj(i)
お姉さん	おねえさん	o-n -san	elder sister, young lady, miss
たい焼き	たいやき	taiyaki	fish-shaped pancake stuffed with bean jam
あん	あん	an	bean paste
あんこ	あんこ	anko	bean paste
かき氷	かきごおり	kakig ri	shaved ice
買う 安い	かう やすい	kau yasui	to buy ; V1 cheap, inexpensive ;



			Adj(i)
魚	さかな	sakana	fish
中	なか	naka	inside, in, among, middle

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

お好み焼きは、とてもおいしいです。	Okonomiyaki is delicious.
それは、違います。	That's not right.
あれは豆です。	Those are beans.
一万円しかありません。	I only have ten thousand yen.
今、小銭しかない。	I only have small change now.
しょうがないですね。	I have no other choices.
お姉さんがいますか。	Do you have an elder sister?
たい焼きを買いたいです。	I want to buy fish-shaped pancakes.
たい焼きのあんが好きです。	I like the bean paste in taiyaki.
たけしさんは、あんこが嫌いです。	Takeshi doesn't like bean paste.
かき氷が大好きです。	I love shaved ice.
ビスケットを九個買います。	I'll buy nine biscuits.
安い車を買いたいです。	I want to buy a cheap car.
バケツに魚がいます。	There is a fish in the bucket.
ポケットの中に何がありますか。	What do you have in your pocket?

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #22 - Find Out About the Place Japanese People Go To Have a Good Time

安くておいしいよ。

Yasukute oishii yo.

"It's sweet and tastes great!"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to combine two or more adjectives

Learn some phrases used while shopping

Learn the function of the particle なあ (naa)

[Combining Two or More Adjectives](#)

When we use two (or more) adjectives to describe a thing or a person, we can combine them into one sentence by changing all adjectives except the last one into the **te-form**.

How to create the te-form of i-adjectives:

1. Drop the final -i (い)
2. Add -kute (くて)

English	Dictionary Form	te-form
"cheap"	やすい yasui	やすくて yasukute
"delicious"	おいしい oishii	おいしくて oishikute
"sweet"	あまい amai	あまくて amakute
"fun"	たのしい tanoshii	たのしくて tanoshikute
"difficult"	むずかしい muzukashii	むずかしくて muzukashikute
"interesting"	おもしろい omoshiroi	おもしろくて omoshirokute
"bad"	わるい warui	わるくて warukute
"good"	いい ii	よくて* yokute

*Note that ii (いい) is an exception to the rule.

How to create the te-form of na-adjectives:

1. Drop the final na (な) to get the dictionary form
2. Add de (で)

English	Dictionary Form	te-form
"energetic", "fine"	元気 genki	元気で genki de
"quiet"	しずか shizuka	しずかで shizuka de



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

"pretty", "clean", "beautiful"	きれい kirei	きれいで kirei de
"tough"	たいへん taihen	たいへんで taihen de

Now that you know how to put both types of adjectives into the te-form, you can create sentences where you use two or more adjectives. When using multiple adjectives, all adjectives except the last one must be in the te-form. Note that the adjectives combined must be all favorable or all unfavorable in the meaning. Let's look at some examples:

Examples From the Dialogue:

1. Street vendor2: (カキ氷は)安くておいしいよ。
Street vendor2: (Kaki g ri wa) yasukute oishii yo.
Street vendor2: "(Shaved ice) is cheap and delicious!"
2. Street vendor 3: (あんこは)甘くておいしいよ。
Street vendor 3: (Anko wa) amakute oishii yo.
Street vendor 3: "(Anko is) sweet and tastes great!"

Other Examples:

1. 鈴木さんは元気でおもしろいです。
Suzuki-san wa genki de omoshiroi desu.
"Mr. Suzuki is energetic and funny."
2. 鈴木さんは元気でおもしろくてしんせつです。
Suzuki-san wa genki de omoshirokute shinsetsu desu.
"Mr. Suzuki is energetic, funny, and kind."

Shopping Phrases

In the dialogue, Ashley had to ask the price of an item as well as ask the street vendor if they had change. Let's look at these and other useful phrases used when shopping.

A useful phrase we can use to ask for the price of anything.

これはいくらですか。 Kore wa ikura desu ka.	"How much is this?"
--------------------------------------	---------------------



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

A phrase we can use when we have decided what we want. We can replace hitotsu (一つ, "one") with other counters to specify different amounts. See Appendix #7 for a full list of counters.

一つください。 Hitotsu kudasai.	"I'll take one"
-----------------------------	-----------------

O-tsurei (おつり) refers to "change." If all you have is a large bill to pay with, you might want to ask if they have enough change.

おつり(は)ありますか。 O-tsurei (wa) arimasu ka.	"Do you have any change?"
---	---------------------------

Kozeni (こぜに) refers to "small bills" or "small change."

こぜに Kozeni	"small change"
---------------	----------------

The Particle N (なあ)

The sentence-ending particle n (なあ) can express either positive feelings such as happiness, thankfulness, and admiration, or negative feelings such as unhappiness, envy, pity, ridicule, and contempt. It can be similar to "How ___!" or "What ___!" in English. When the street vendor uses it after the phrase shōga nai [しょうがない or "it can't be helped"], he is mostly saying it to himself, and not saying it directly to Ashley.

Example:

1. アシュリー: すみません。これしかありません。
Ashur: Sumimasen. Kore shika arimasen.
Ashley: "Sorry, this is all I have."
2. 屋台の人3: しょうがないなあ・・・。
Yatai no hito 3: Shōga nai n ...
Street vendor3: "Guess it can't be helped..."



Other Examples:

1. きれいだなあ。
Kirei da na .
"It's beautiful!"/"How beautiful!!"
2. 高いなあ。
Takai na .
"It's expensive!"/"How expensive!"

Vocab Usage: Welcome! and How about some ?

いらっしゃい [irasshai!] "Welcome!"

Irasshai is a phrase that is short for irasshaimase (introduced in Lesson 10) and means "welcome" and is often said by store clerks when you enter a shop, restaurant or supermarket.

いかがですか。 [ikaga desu ka?] "How is it?" "How about some ?"

Ikaga desu ka is a question used when selling something to draw attention to what you are selling. It is common to say the name of the product followed by ikaga desu ka, which is the equivalent of "How about some [product]?"



Cultural Insight

Yaki - An Important Word in Japanese Cuisine

Yaki (焼き) is a word that means "baked," "fried," or "grilled" in Japanese. In the dialogue of this lesson, Ashley tries a Japanese pastry called taiyaki (たい焼き), which is a fish-shaped pancake with a sweet bean-paste filling called anko, or anko. While anko is the standard filling for taiyaki, there are also taiyaki that have different fillings, such as custard cream. Other Japanese food names that contain the word yaki include okonomiyaki (a pancake that contains vegetables and meat that was introduced in All About Japanese Lesson 7), yakisoba (fried noodles), yakitori (skewered grilled chicken), and teriyaki (a cooking method of marinating and then grilling or broiling meat).



Gengo Japanese S1

Take Charge of the Situation Using Your Japanese

23

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	10

Formal Kanji

(Rush hour)

アナウンス
アシュリー

次は、秋葉原。秋葉原。
すみません。降ります。すみません！

(Ashley manages to get off the train)

アシュリー
駅員

すみません。ここは、どこですか。
え？秋葉原駅の西口です。

アシュリー
駅員

ヨドバシカメラはどこですか。
中央改札口を出てください。

アシュリー
駅員

ちゅうおうかいさつぐち....は何ですか。
まっすぐ行ってください。あります。

アシュリー
駅員

あの、もう一度おねがいします。
仕方ないなあ。・・・じゃ、来てください。

駅員

(They walk to the Central Exit)
ここは、中央改札口です。

アシュリー

ここを出て、右に曲がってください。
それから、左に曲がってください。

アシュリー
駅員

右に曲がって、左に曲がる・・・
わかりました。本当にありがとうございました。

じゃ、気をつけて。

Formal Kana

(Rush hour)

アナウンス
アシュリー

つぎは、あきはばら。あきはばら。
すみません。おります。すみません！

(Ashley manages to get off the train)

アシュリー
えきいん

すみません。ここは、どこですか。
え？あきはばらえきのにしぐちです。

アシュリー
えきいん

ヨドバシカメラはどこですか。
ちゅうおうかいさつぐちをでてください。

アシュリー
えきいん

ちゅうおうかいさつぐち....は何ですか。
まっすぐ行ってください。あります。

アシュリー
えきいん

あの、もういちどおねがいします。
しかたないなあ。・・・じゃ、きてください。

えきいん

(They walk to the Central Exit)
ここは、ちゅうおうかいさつぐちです。

アシュリー

えきいん

ここをでて、みぎにまがってください。
それから、ひだりにまがってください。
みぎにまがって、ひだりにまがる・・・
わかりました。ほんとうにありがとうございました。
じゃ、きをつけて。

Formal Romanization

(Rush hour)

Anaunsu

Ashur

Ashur

Ekiin

Ashur

Ekiin

Ashur

Ekiin

Ashur

Ekiin

Ekiin

Ashur

Ekiin

Tsugi wa, Akihabara. Akihabara.
Sumimasen. Orimasu. Sumimasen!
(Ashley manages to get off the train)
Sumimasen. Koko wa, doko desu ka.
E? Akihabara eki no nishi-guchi desu.
Yodobashikamera wa doko desu ka.
Ch kaisatsu-guchi o dete kudasai.
Ch kaisatsu-guchi.... wa nan desu ka.
Massugu itte kudasai. Arimasu.
Ano, m ichi-do onegai shimasu.
Shikata nai n Ja, kite kudasai.
(They walk to the Central Exit)
Koko wa, ch kaisatsu-guchi desu.
Koko o dete, migi ni magatte kudasai.
Sore kara, hidari ni magatte kudasai.
Migi ni magatte, hidari ni magaru...
Wakarimashita. Hont ni arigat gozaimashita.
Ja, ki o tsukete.

English

(Rush hour)

Train

Announcement

Ashley

Ashley

Station Attendant

Next is Akihabara...Akihabara...
Excuse me. I'm getting off here. Excuse me!
(Ashley manages to get off the train)
Excuse me, where is this place?
Huh? This is Akihabara Station's West Exit.

Ashley Where is Yodobashi camera?
 Station Attendant Go out the Chuo kaisatsu guchi.
 Ashley "Chuo kaisatsu guchi..." what's that?
 Station Attendant Go straight ahead, and it's there.
 Ashley Um, could you say that one more time?
 Station Attendant Guess I have no choice. (sigh) All right, come with me.
 (They walk to the Central Exit)
 Station Attendant This is the Central Exit.
 Go out here, and turn right.
 Then, turn left.
 Ashley Turn right, and then turn left...
 I see. Thank you very much.
 Station Attendant Take care.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
降りる	降りる	oriru	to get off; V2
改札口	かいさつぐち	kaisatsu-guchi	ticket entrance
まっすぐ	まっすぐ	massugu	straight ; Adj (na), Adv.
来る	くる	kuru	to come;V3
曲がる	まがる	magaru	to turn;V1
気をつける	きをつける	ki o tsukeru	to be careful; V2
出る	でる	deru	to leave; V2
本当に	ほんとうに	hont ni	really, truly; Adv.
右	みぎ	migi	right hand side
中央	ちゅうおう	ch	center, middle
西口	にしぐち	nishi-guchi	west exit
仕方ない	しかたない	shikata nai	it can't be helped, it's inevitable; Adj(i)

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

秋葉原駅で、降りてください。
 改札口に来てください。
 まっすぐ行ってください。
 電車は何時に来ますか。
 左に曲がってください。

Please get off the train at Akihabara station.
 Please come to the ticket gate.
 Please go straight.
 What time will the train come?
 Please turn left.



普段から、食生活に気をつける。
今、家を出ました。
本当にありがとうございます。
花屋の右に本屋があります。
日本の中央銀行は日本銀行です。
私は、今、西口にいます。
仕方ないですね。

I always watch what I eat.
I've just left my house.
Thank you so much.
There's a bookstore to the right of the florist.
Japanese central bank is the bank of Japan.
I'm at the west exit now.
I guess I have no choice.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #23 - Take Charge of the Situation Using Your Japanese

右に曲がって、左に曲がる...

Migi ni magatte, hidari ni magaru...

"Turn right, and then turn left..."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to make and use the te-form of verbs

Learn how to ask someone to do something using [te-form of verb] *kudasai* (ください)

Learn useful phrases for giving directions

Learn how to use the set phrase *ai o tsukete* (気をつけて)

Te-form of Verbs

The te-form of verbs has many different uses in Japanese. In this lesson, we will focus on the te-form plus *kudasai* (ください), which enables us to make a polite request.

Class 1

We can sort class 1 verbs into several groups according to the final syllable of their dictionary forms.

Class 1 verbs that end in *ku*, *-gu* *ite*, *ide*

English	Dictionary Form	te-form
"to hear"	きく kiku	きいて kiite
"to hurry"	いそぐ	いそいで



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

	isogu	isoide
EXCEPTION!		
"to go"	いく iku	いって itte

Class 1 verbs that end in -mu, -bu, -nu, nde

English	Dictionary Form	te-form
"to drink"	のむ nomu	のんで nonde
"to play"	あそぶ asobu	あそんで asonde
"to die"	しぬ shinu	しんで shinde

Class 1 verbs that end in -u, -tsu, -ru, tte

English	Dictionary Form	te-form
"to buy"	かう kau	かって katte
"to wait"	まつ matsu	まって matte
"to turn"	まがる magaru	まがって magatte

Class 1 verbs that end in -su shite

English	Dictionary Form	te-form
"to speak"	はなす hanasu	はなして hanashite



Class 2

1. Omit the final -ru sound
2. Add -te

English	Dictionary Form	te-form
"to open"	あける akeru	あけて akete
"to close"	しめる shimeru	しめて shimete
"to eat"	たべる taberu	たべて tabete
"to look, to see"	みる miru	みて mite
"to show"	みせる miseru	みせて misete
"to teach"	おしえる oshieru	おしえて oshiete
"to leave, to appear"	でる deru	でて dete

Class 3

English	Dictionary Form	te-form
"to do"	する suru	して shite
"to come"	くる kuru	きて kite

[Te-form of a Verb] + Kudasai (ください)

Now that we know how to make the te-form of a verb, we can use it to ask something to do something. By adding kudasai (ください) to the te-form of a verb, we create a command.

[te-form of a verb] + kudasai

Verb (dictionary form)	Te-form of a verb	+ kudasai	"Please ____"
いそぐ isogu	いそいで isoide	+ ください + kudasai	"Please hurry."
まつ matsu	まって matte	+ ください + kudasai	"Please wait."
曲がる magaru	曲がって magatte	+ ください + kudasai	"Please turn."
来る kuru	来て kite	+ ください + kudasai	"Please come."

Examples From the Dialogue:

1. 駅員: 中央改札口を出てください。
Eki'in: Ch kaisatsu guchi o dete kudasai.
Station Attendant: "Go out the Central Exit."
2. 駅員: じゃ、来ててください。
Eki'in: Ja, kite kudasai.
Station Attendant: "All right, come with me."

Useful Phrases for Giving Directions

In the dialogue, Ashley asked the station attendant for directions to Yodobashi Camera. Let's take a look at some expressions that we commonly use when giving directions. These are necessary if you ever plan to travel to Japan!

左にまがる	hidari ni magaru	"to turn left"
右にまがる	migi ni magaru	"to turn right"
まっすぐ(に)いく	massugu (ni) iku	"to go straight"
(place)を出る	(place) o deru	"to leave (a place)"
(place)で降りる	(place) de oriru	"to get off at (place)"

Te-form commands:

左にまがって	hidari ni magatte	"Turn left."
右にまがって	migi ni magatte	"Turn right."
まっすぐ(に)行って	massugu (ni) itte	"Go straight."
(place)を出て	(place) o dete	"Leave (place)."



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

(place)で降りて	(place) de orite	"Get off at (place)."
-------------	------------------	-----------------------

Examples:

1. 駅員:ここを出て、右に曲がってください。
Eki'in: Koko o dete, migi ni magatte kudasai.
Station Attendant: "Go out here, and turn right."
2. 駅員:それから、左に曲がってください。
Eki'in: Sore kara, hidari ni magatte kudasai.
Station Attendant: "Then, turn left."
3. アシュリー:右に曲がって、左に曲がる・・・
Ashur : Migi ni magatte, hidari ni magaru...
Ashley: "Turn right, and then turn left..."

Using Ki o Tsukete (気をつけて)

Ki o tsukete (気をつけて) is a set phrase that we use to mean "take care" or "be careful." We often use it when we are seeing somebody off. In the dialogue, the station attendant says it to Ashley as she leaves. Adding kudasai (ください) to the end of this phrase makes it more polite: ki o tsukete kudasai (気をつけてください).

駅員:じゃ、気をつけて。
Eki'in: Ja, ki o tsukete.
Station Attendant: "Take care."

Vocabulary Building

Let's take a look at how to say cardinal directions in Japanese.

Japanese	Romaji	English
北	kita	"North"
南	minami	"South"
西	nishi	"West"
東	higashi	"East"

We can combine these cardinal directions with the word guchi (口) meaning "exit," to specify certain exits. These words are often used at train stations.

Japanese	Romaji	English
北口	kita-guchi	"North exit"

南口	minami-guchi	"South exit"
西口	nishi-guchi	"West exit"
東口	higashi-guchi	"East exit"
入口	iriguchi	"entrance"
出口	deguchi	"exit"

Cultural Insight

Rush Hour in Japan

In Tokyo and other major Japanese cities, public transport becomes very crowded during the rush hour. With most companies starting work at 9:00 AM and ending at 5:00 PM, rush hour is between roughly 7:45 to 8:45 AM and shortly after 5:00 PM on weekdays. If you ride the train during rush hour and have trouble getting off of the train at your stop, you can use the phrases Ashley used in the dialogue: *sumimasen, orimasu* (すみません、降ります), which means, "Excuse me, I'm getting off here." Even when it's not rush hour, some train lines in Japan can get quite crowded, so it's a good idea to keep these phrases in mind.



Gengo Japanese S1

Make the Most of Your Japanese Skills - Don't Miss Your Big Chance to
Start Speaking

24

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	4
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	9

Formal Kanji

- アシュリー ここよく来る？
豊田一郎 は？ああー！アシュリーさん！何してるの。
アシュリー 買い物と観光をしています。
豊田一郎 豊田一郎さんは。
豊田一郎 一郎と呼んでください。
アシュリー 僕は仕事をしています。
豊田一郎 アキバの写真を撮っています。
アシュリー ああ、仕事ですか。
豊田一郎 で、日本はどうですか。
アシュリー とても楽しいです。
豊田一郎 でも、とても暑いですね。
豊田一郎 そうですね、むし暑いですね。(Cell phone rings)
アシュリー ちょっとすみません。
豊田一郎 ……はい、もしもし？うん。今、秋葉原にいる。
アシュリー 写真を撮ってる。
豊田一郎 ……ええ？お客さん？待っている？
アシュリー ちょっと待って。今、すぐに帰る。(Hangs up)
豊田一郎 アシュリーさん、ごめんなさい。ゆっくり話したいけど……。
アシュリー アシュリーさん、明日の夜、時間ある？
豊田一郎 あ、明日から、日光に行きます。
アシュリー でも、週末は暇です。
豊田一郎 じゃ、メールして。じゃ。

Formal Kana

- アシュリー ここよくくる？
とよたいちろう は？ああー！アシュリーさん！なにしてるの。
アシュリー かいものとかんこうをしています。
とよたいちろう とよたいちろうさんは。
とよたいちろう いちろうとよんでください。
アシュリー ぼくはしごとをしています。
とよたいちろう アキバのしゃしんをとっています。
アシュリー ああ、しごとですか。
とよだいちろう で、にほんはどうですか。
アシュリー とてもたのしいです。
とよだいちろう でも、とてもあついですね。



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

とよたいちろう そうですね、むしあついですね。(Cell phone rings)
ちょっとすみません。・・・はい、もしもし？
うん。いま、あきはばらにいる。
しゃしんをとってる。
・・・ええ？おきゃくさん？まっている？
ちょっとまって。いま、すぐにかえる。(Hangs up)
アシュリーさん、ごめんなさい。ゆっくりはなしたいけど・・・
。
アシュリーさん、あしたのよる、じかんある？
アシュリー あ、あしたから、にっこうにいきます。
でも、しゅうまつはひまです。
とよたいちろう じゃ、メールして。じゃ。

Formal Romanization

Ashur Koko yoku kuru?
Toyota Ichir Ha? ! Ashur -san! Nani shite ru no.
Ashur Kaimono to kank o shite imasu.
Toyota Ichir Toyota Ichir -san wa.
Toyota Ichir Ichir to yonde kudasai.
Ashur Boku wa shigoto o shite imasu.
Toyota Ichir Akiba no shashin o totte imasu.
Ashur , shigoto desu ka.
Toyota Ichir De, Nihon wa d desu ka.
Ashur Totemo tanoshii desu.
Toyota Ichir Demo, totemo atsui desu ne.
Toyota Ichir S desu ne, mushiatsui desu ne. (Cell phone rings)
Ashur Chotto sumimasen
Toyota Ichir Hai moshimoshi? Un. Ima, Akihabara ni iru. Shashin o totte ru.
Ashur ? O-kyaku-san? Matte iru?
Toyota Ichir Chotto matte. Ima, sugu ni kaeru.(Hangs up)
Ashur Ashur -san, gomen nasai. Yukkuri hanashitai kedo....
Ashur Ashur -san, ashita no yoru, jikan aru?
Ashur A, ashita kara, Nikk ni ikimasu.
Toyota Ichir Demo, sh matsu wa hima desu.
Toyota Ichir Ja, m ru shite. Ja.

English

Ashley Do you come here often?
 Ichiro Toyota Huh? Ohh! Ashley-san! What are you doing?
 Ashley I'm shopping and sightseeing.
 How about you, Ichiro Toyota?
 Ichiro Toyota Please, call me Ichiro.
 I'm working.
 I'm taking pictures of Akihabara.
 Ashley Oh, work?
 Ichiro Toyota So, how's Japan?
 Ashley It's a lot of fun!
 But it's really hot, isn't it?
 Ichiro Toyota Yes it is,
 it's really humid. (cell phone rings)
 Excuse me for a moment.
 ...Hello? Yeah. I'm in Akihabara right now.
 I'm taking pictures...
 huh? A customer? Is waiting?
 Okay, hold on. I'm leaving now. (Hangs up)
 Ashley-san, I'm really sorry. I'd like to stay and chat but...
 do you have time tomorrow evening?
 Ashley Oh, tomorrow I'm going to Nikko.
 But I'm free on the weekend.
 Ichiro Toyota Okay well, e-mail me! See ya.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
買い物	かいもの	kaimono	shopping
呼ぶ	よぶ	yobu	to call
写真	しゃしん	shashin	photograph
とる	とる	toru	to take (a photo); V1
待つ	まつ	matsu	to wait; V1
ゆっくり	ゆっくり	yukkuri	at leisure, at one's own pace
むし暑い	むしあつい	mushiatsui	humid, muggy ; Adj (i)
社長	しゃちょう	shach	boss, company president



すぐに	すぐに	sugu ni	immediately, instantly; Adv
帰る	かえる	kaeru	to return, to go home; V1
ごめんなさい。	ごめんなさい。	Gomen nasai.	I'm sorry. (apology)
話す	はなす	hanasu	to talk, to speak ; V1
週末	しゅうまつ	sh matsu	weekend
メール	メール	m ru	e-mail

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

私は買い物大好きです。
ジョナサンと呼んでください。
これは、私の子供の写真です。
写真を撮ってください。
ちょっと待ってください。
ゆっくり、ジョンさんと話したいです。
八月はむし暑い。
わたしは社長です。
すぐに来てください。
アメリカに帰りたいです。
本当にごめんなさい。
すみません、ゆっくり話してください。
この週末、暇ですか。
あとで、メールします。

I like shopping very much.
Please call me Jonathan.
This is a picture of my child.
Please take a picture.
Please wait a minute.
I want to talk at leisure with John.
It's humid in August.
I'm a (company) president.
Please come right away.
I want to go back to the U.S.
I'm really sorry.
Excuse me, but please speak slowly.
Are you free this weekend?
I'll e-mail you later.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #24 - Make the Most of Your Japanese Skills - Don't Miss Your Big Chance to Start Speaking

僕は仕事をしています。アキバの写真をとっています。

Boku wa shigoto o shite imasu. Akiba no shashin o totte imasu.

"I'm working. I'm taking pictures of Akihabara."

In this lesson, you will:

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Learn about te iru (ている) to talk about on-going actions and states
Learn how to use the phrase ~ to yonde kudasai (とよんでください)

Te-form of a Verb Plus Iru/Imasu

In this lesson, we are focusing on using [te-form of a verb] + [iru/imasu]. This construction can express two meanings but we will be focusing on only one of them. [Te-form of a verb] + [iru/imasu] represents a present progressive action (like -ing in English).

To make this construction, we put the verb in the te-form and add iru (いる) or imasu (います).

[verb te-form + iru/imasu]

English	Dictionary and te-form	te-form + iru (informal)	te-form + imasu (formal)	Present Progressive
"to use"	使う tsukau	使っている tsukatte iru	使っています tsukatte imasu	"am using"
"to swim"	泳ぐ oyogu	泳いでいる oyoide iru	泳んでいます oyoide imasu	"am swimming"
"to speak"	話す hanasu hanashite	話している hanashite iru	話しています hanashite imasu	"am speaking"
"to drink"	飲む nomu	飲んでいる nonde iru	飲んでいます nonde imasu	"am drinking"
"to look"	見る miru	見ている mite iru	見えています mite imasu	"am looking"
"to eat"	食べる taberu	食べている tabete iru	食べています tabete imasu	"am eating"
"to do"	する suru	している shite iru	しています shite imasu	"am doing"

Note that in casual speech, the first "i" in iru or imasu can be omitted. We saw this in the



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

dialogue when Ichiro says: "Shashin o totte ru." Normally it would be "Shashin o totte iru", but the "i" is omitted.

Let's take a look at different sentences that use the te-form:

	Informal	Formal
Non-past Affirmative ("Ichiro takes pictures")	一郎は写真をとる。 Ichir wa shashin o toru.	一郎は写真をとります。 Ichir wa shashin o torimasu.
Present Progressive ("Ichiro is taking pictures")	一郎は写真をとっている。 Ichir wa shashin o totte iru.	一郎は写真をとっています。 Ichir wa shashin o totte imasu.
Question ("Is Ichiro taking pictures?")	一郎は写真をとっている？ Ichir wa shashin o totte iru?	一郎は写真をとっていますか？ Ichir wa shashin o totte imasu ka?
Question ("what") ("What is Ichiro taking pictures of?")	一郎は何をとっている？ Ichir wa nani o totte iru?	一郎は何をとっていますか？ Ichir wa nani o totte imasu ka?
Question ("what") ("What is Ichiro doing?")	一郎は何をしている？ Ichir wa nani o shite iru?	一郎は何をしていますか。 Ichir wa nani o shite imasu ka?

Examples from the Dialog:

1. 豊田一郎: 僕は仕事をしています。アキバの写真をとっています。
Toyota Ichir : Boku wa shigoto o shite imasu. Akiba no shashin o totte imasu.
Ichiro Toyota: "I'm working. I'm taking pictures of Akihabara."
2. 豊田一郎: 今、秋葉原にいる。写真をとってる。
Toyota Ichir : Ima, Akihabara ni iru. Shashin o totteru.
Ichiro Toyota: "Yeah. I'm in Akihabara right now. I'm taking pictures."

Other Examples:

1. 私は日本語を勉強しています。



Watashi wa Nihon-go o benkyō shite imasu.

"I'm studying Japanese."

- 彼女は浴衣を着ています。

Kanojo wa yukata o kite imasu.

"She is wearing a yukata."

Please, Call Me _

If you have a nickname or a name that you prefer to go by, you can let people know by using the phrase [preferred name] to yonde kudasai (~ とよんでください). To (と) is a particle we use for quotes.

[Preferred Name] to yonde kudasai.

Example from the Dialogue:

豊田一郎: 一郎とよんでください。

Toyota Ichir : Ichir to yonde kudasai.

Ichiro Toyota: "Please call me Ichiro."

Other Examples:

1. ぼくはトーマス・ブラウンです。トムとよんでください。

Boku wa T masu Buraun desu. Tomu to yonde kudasai.

"I'm Thomas Brown. Please call me Tom."

2. 私はジェシカです。ジェシーとよんでください。

Watashi wa Jeshika desu. Jesh to yonde kudasai.

"I'm Jessica. Please call me Jessi."

Cultural Insight

Akihabara (秋葉原)

In this dialogue, Ashley visited Akihabara, a district in central Tokyo that is now renowned as a major shopping district for electronics and computer goods. In recent years, it has become home to the unique anime/manga/gaming subculture. Many of the shops in Akihabara cater toward otaku, a word that refers to people who are into something - particularly anime, manga, and video games - to an obsessive degree. While the word is mainly used to refer to people with these kinds of interests, it can be applied to other interests as well (soccer otaku, train otaku, etc.). We often shorten the name Akihabara to Akiba in Japan.





Gengo Japanese S1

The Right Way to Do a Home Stay - Japanese Manner and Etiquette

25

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	4
Vocabulary	5
Grammar Points	7
Cultural Insight	11

Formal Kanji

- (日光駅)
光岡(母) 失礼ですが、アシュリーさんですか。
アシュリー はい、アシュリーです。
光岡(母) はじめまして。光岡れいの母です。
あなた、あなた！
アシュリーさんいましたよ。
光岡(父) アシュリーさん、日光へようこそ。
れいの父です。
れいがお世話になっています。
さあ、家でお昼ご飯を食べましょう。
車に乗ってください。
- (光岡さんの家)
光岡(母) さあ、どうぞ。
靴をぬいで、あがってください。
せまいところですけど...。
アシュリー お邪魔します。(achoo)
光岡(父) さあ、入って、荷物を置いて。
遠慮しないでくださいね。
アシュリー すみません。お世話になります。
きれいなお部屋ですね。
あ、これは、ご家族の写真ですか。(achoo)
お父さんと、お母さんと、れいさんと、れいさんの弟さんですね。
。
- 光岡(父) そう。それから、ニャンタ。猫です。
猫 (meow)
アシュリー (achoo)
光岡(母) アシュリーさん、猫アレルギー？
アシュリー はい。猫にアレルギーがあります。
でも。心配しないでください。(achoo)
大丈夫です。

Formal Kana

- (にっこうえき)
みつおか(はは) しつれいですが、アシュリーさんですか。
アシュリー はい、アシュリーです。



- みつおか(はは) はじめまして。みつおかれいのははです。
あなた、あなた！
アシュリーさんいましたよ。
- みつおか(ちち) アシュリーさん、にっこうへようこそ。
れいのちちです。
れいがおせわになっています。
さあ、いえでおひるごはんをたべましょう。
くるまにのってください。
- (みつおかさんのうち)
- みつおか(はは) さあ、どうぞ。
くつをぬいで、あがってください。
せまいところですけど…。
- アシュリー おじゃまします。(achoo)
- みつおか(ちち) さあ、はいって、にもつをおいて。
えんりよしないてくださいね。
- アシュリー すみません。おせわになります。
きれいなおへやですね。あ、これは、ごかぞくのしゃしんですか。
(achoo)
おとうさんと、おかあさんと、れいさんと、れいさんのおとうと
さんですね。
- みつおか(ちち) そう。それから、ニャンタ。ねこです。
ねこ
- アシュリー (achoo)
- みつおか(はは) アシュリーさん、ねこアレルギー？
- アシュリー はい。ねこにアレルギーがあります。
でも。しんぱいしないでください。(achoo)
だいじょうぶです。

Formal Romanization

- (Nikk eki)
- Mitsuoka(haha) Shitsurei desu ga, Ashur -san desu ka.
Ashur Hai, Ashur desu.
Mitsuoka(haha) Hajimemashite. Mitsuoka Rei no haha desu.
Anata, anata!
Ashur -san imashita yo.
- Mitsuoka(chichi) Ashur -san, Nikk e y koso.
Rei no chichi desu.
Rei ga o-sewa ni natte imasu.

S , ie de o-hiru go-han o tabemash .
Kuruma ni notte kudasai.

(Mitsuoka no uchi)
Mitsuoka(haha) S , d zo.
Kutsu o nuide, agatte kudasai.
Semai tokoro desu kedo....

Ashur O-jama shimasu.(achoo)
Mitsuoka(chichi) S , haitte, nimotsu o oite.
Enryo shinaide kudasai ne.

Ashur Sumimasen. O-sewa ni narimasu.
Kirei na o-heyra desu ne.
A, kore wa, go-kazoku no shashin desu ka.(achoo)
O-t -san to, o-k -san to, Rei-san to, Rei-san no ot to-san desu
ne.

Mitsuoka(chichi) S . Sore kara, Nyanta. Neko desu.
neko (meow)
Ashur (achoo)
Mitsuoka(haha) Ashur -san, neko arerug ?
Ashur Hai. Neko ni arerug ga arimasu.
Demo. Shinpai shinaide kudasai.(achoo)
Daij bu desu.

English

(At Nikko Station)

Mrs. Mitsuoka Excuse me for asking, but are you Ashley?

Ashley Yes, I'm Ashley.

Mrs. Mitsuoka Nice to meet you. I'm Rei Mitsuoka's mother.

Honey, honey!

Ashley's over here!

Mr. Mitsuoka Ashley, welcome to Nikko!

I'm Rei's father.

Thank you for always helping Rei out.

Well, let's go have lunch at home.

Please get in the car.

(the Mitsuokas' house)

Mrs. Mitsuoka Come on in!

Please take off your shoes and come in.

Our house is very small...

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Ashley Please excuse the intrusion. (achoo)
Mr. Mitsuoka Come in and put your stuff down. Please don't hesitate.
Ashley Thank you for your kindness.
This is a beautiful room!
Oh, is this a picture of the family? (achoo)
It's Father, Mother, Rei-san, and Rei's little brother, right?
Mr. Mitsuoka Yup. And this is Nyanta, the cat.
Cat (meow)
Ashley (achoo)
Mrs. Mitsuoka Ashley, are you allergic to cats?
Ashley Yes, I'm allergic to cats.
But, please don't worry about me. (achoo)
I'm fine.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
いつも	いつも	itsumo	always, usually
車	くるま	kuruma	car
乗る	のる	noru	to ride, to take, to get on; V1
靴	くつ	kutsu	shoes
あなた	あなた	anata	you, honey(from wife to husband)
お世話になる	おせわになる	o-sewa ni naru	to be taken care of; V1
昼ごはん	ひるごはん	hiru go-han	lunch
ぬぐ	ぬぐ	nugu	to take off; V1
せまい	せまい	semai	narrow, small; Adj(i)
ところ	ところ	tokoro	place
置く	おく	oku	to put, to place, to leave(behind); V1
遠慮する	えんりよする	enryo suru	to hesitate, to be humble; V3
心配する	しんぱいする	shinpai suru	to worry; V3
失礼	しつれい	shitsurei	rude, impoliteness; Adv, noun
父	ちち	chichi	father
荷物	にもつ	nimotsu	luggage, baggage
家族	かぞく	kazoku	family



母	はは	haha	mother
入る	はいる	hairu	get into, enter, join ; V1
お父さん	おとうさん	o-t -san	father
お母さん	おかあさん	o-k -san	mother
弟	おとうと	ot to	younger brother
猫	ねこ	neko	cat
アレルギー	アレルギー	arerug	allergy
さあ	さあ	s	come on

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

シンガポールは、いつも暑いです。
 これは日本の車です。
 私は、バスに乗りました。
 これはイタリアの靴です。
 これはあなたのですか。
 お世話になりました。
 あそこで、お昼ごはんを食べませんか。
 靴をぬいでください。
 私の部屋はせまいです。
 ディズニーランドは楽しいところです。
 そこに荷物を置いてください。
 遠慮しないで。
 心配しないで。
 失礼な人は好きじゃないです。
 これは、うちの父です。
 荷物、いくつありますか。
 これは、私の家族の写真です。
 これは、うちの母です。
 先週、この会社に入りました。
 お父さんはお元気ですか。
 お母さんはお元気ですか。
 私の弟はジャーナリストです。
 テーブルの下に猫がいます。
 アレルギーがあります。
 さあ、行きましょう。

It's always hot in Singapore.
 This is a Japanese car.
 I took a bus.
 These are Italian shoes.
 Is this yours?
 Thank you for your kindness.
 Why don't we have lunch there.
 Please take off your shoes.
 My room is small.
 Disneyland is a fun place.
 Please put your luggage there.
 Don't hesitate.
 Don't worry.
 I don't like rude people.
 This is my father.
 How many pieces of luggage do you have?
 This is a photo of my family.
 This is my mother.
 I joined this company last week.
 How's your father?
 How's your mother?
 My younger brother is a journalist.
 There is a cat under the table.
 I have allergies.
 Come on, let's go!

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #25 - The Right Way to Do a Home Stay - Japanese Manner and Etiquette

さあ、どうぞ。靴をぬいで、あがってください。せまいところですけど...。

S , d zo. Kutsu o nuide, agatte kudasai. Semai tokoro desu kedo...

"Come on in! Please take off your shoes and come in. Our house is very small..."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to tell someone not to do something withnai de kudasai (-ないてください)

Learn useful phrases for visiting a Japanese home

Learn the meaning of the expression *o-sewa ni narimasu* (お世話になります)

Telling Someone Not to Do Something

To tell someone not to do something, we put the verb into the informal negative form and then add de kudasai (てください). We went over how to create the negative form in Lesson 18 and 19. Let's quickly review how to make this negative form:

Class 1 verbs (-u verbs)

1. Drop the final -u sound
2. Add -a nai

English	Dictionary Form	Plain Negative Form
"to run"	走る hashiru	走らない hashiranai
"to go"	行く iku	行かない ikanai
"to speak"	話す hanasu	話さない hanasanai
"to buy"	買う kau	買わない kawanai *

* For the class 1 verbs that have dictionary forms ending in hiragana u (う), we add -wanai

(わない) instead of anai (あない).

Class 2 verbs (-ru verbs)

1. Drop the final ru sound
2. Add nai

English	Dictionary Form	Plain Negative Form
"to eat"	食べる taberu	食べない tabenai
"to see"	見る miru	見ない minai

Class 3 verbs (Irregular verbs)

Remember that the two irregular verbs don't follow any pattern and so their different forms must be memorized.

English	Dictionary Form	Plain Negative Form
"to do"	する suru	しない shinai
"to come"	来る kuru	来ない konai

Adding **de (で)** to the negative form of the verb creates an informal command.

[informal negative form of verb] + de = "Do not [verb]"

Adding **-de kudasai (てください)** to the negative form of the verb creates a formal command:

[informal negative form of verb] + de kudasai = "Please do not [verb]"

Dictionary Form	Informal Negative	+ de (kudasai)	Translation
行く [iku]	行かない	行かないで (ください)	"(Please) do not



"to go"	ikanai	ikanai de (kudasai)	go"
見る [miru] "to see"	見ない minai	見ないで (ください) minai de (kudasai)	"(Please) do not look"
遠慮する [enryo suru] "to hesitate"	遠慮しない enryo shinai	遠慮しないで (ください) enryo shinai de kudasai	"(Please) do not hesitate"

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. 光岡 (父): さあ、入って、荷物を置いて。遠慮しないでくださいね。
Mitsuoka (chichi): S , haitte, nimotsu o oite. Enryo shinai de kudasai ne.
Mr. Mitsuoka: "Come in and put your stuff down. Please don't hesitate."
2. アシュリー: 心配しないでください。
Ashur : Shinpai shinai de kudasai.
Ashley: "Please don't worry about me."

Other Examples:

1. 走らないでください。
Hashiranai de kudasai.
"Please don't run."
2. あの部屋に入らないでください。
Ano heya ni hairanaide kudasai.
"Please don't go into that room."

Phrases for Visiting a Japanese Home

In this dialogue, Ashley visits the home of Rei Mitsuoka's parents for the first time. Let's take a look at some phrases we heard being used:

	Translation	Explanation
お邪魔します O-jama shimasu	"Please excuse my intrusion."	Used when you enter somebody's home.
あがってください Agatte kudasai	"Please come in."	Used when inviting someone into your house. Agaru (あがる) literally means to "come up" and is used



		because when you enter a Japanese house, you step up into the house from the genkan ("entrance"), which is lowered.
--	--	---

The Expression O-sewa ni naru (お世話になる)

The word sewa (世話) means "care" or "favor" and the phrase o-sewa ni naru (お世話になる) we can translate as "to be taken care of" or "to rely on."

お世話になります [O-sewa ni narimasu]

You use this phrase towards someone who is going to be assisting you or taking care of you in some way. In the dialogue, Ashley uses it to show her appreciation towards Rei Mitsuoka's parents because they are letting her stay with them.

お世話になってます [O-sewa ni natte imasu]

This phrase is commonly used in a formal greeting or introduction, especially in business situations when greeting someone who works closely with your company. Outside of a business situation, when you are introduced to a person who knows one of your family members, the name of the [family member] + [ga] precedes o-sewa ni natte imasu. This is the situation when Rei's father uses it towards Ashley when talking about his daughter.

お世話になりました [O-sewa ni narimashita]

This phrase has a variety of meanings depending on the situation. We often use it in a farewell situation, where it implies that the listener has done something for or has helped the speaker in some way, and therefore roughly translates to "thanks for everything" or "thank you for your kindness/hospitality."

Vocab Usage: ga/kedo

ga/kedo - We mentioned that the word demo (でも) means "but". This word usually comes at the beginning of a sentence. In the dialogue we also saw another word, kedo (けど), which means "but" or "however" and comes at the end of a sentence or phrase. When it comes at the end of a sentence it means that the sentence is incomplete and trails off and the listener is expected to understand what's inferred. The word kedo (けど) is short for keredomo

(けれども), and the word ga (が) also has the same meaning of "but, however" and is used in the same way.

Example from the Dialogue:

光岡(母):せまいところですけど....

Mitsuoka(haha):Semai tokoro desu kedo....

Mrs. Mitsuoka: Our house is very small, but... (please make yourself at home)

Other Examples:

すみませんが....

Sumimasen ga....

Excuse me but...

つまらないものですが....

Tsumaranai mono desu ga...

It's nothing special but....(I hope you like it.)

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw a lot of vocabulary related to family:

母 haha - (one's own) mother

父 ehichi - (one's own) father

お母さん o-k -san - (someone else's) mother

お父さん o-t -san - (someone else's) father

For more detailed information on family-related vocabulary, please check the following Appendix lesson: Family Members (Appendix #12)

Cultural Insight

Using anata

When starting out learning Japanese, we learn that the word for "you" is anata (あなた).

While this is technically true, the word anata cannot be considered the exact equivalent of

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

"you" in English. While the word "you" can be used toward anyone in English, in Japanese you should only use anata with strangers whose name you don't know, as it has the potential to sound a little cold and distant. In Japanese, it is much more common to address someone by their name rather than with "you," so if you know someone's name, you should address them that way. One important thing to note, however, is how wives use anata to address their husbands. Wives use anata toward their husbands in the same way that a wife might use "honey" or "darling" toward her husband in English.



Gengo Japanese S1

The Best Japanese Dish You'll Ever Have

26

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	10

Formal Kanji

- 光岡 (母) アシュリーさん、嫌いなものはありますか。
アシュリー 特に何もありません。
何でも食べます。
- 光岡 (母) それはよかった。
- 光岡 (母) 何もありませんが、どうぞ。
アシュリー あ、おそばですね。私、大好きです。
いただきます。(eats soba)
おいしい! とってもおいしいです。
- 光岡 (父) これもどうぞ。ゆばです。
日光のゆばは有名ですよ。
それから、これは、こんにゃくです。
- アシュリー うーん。どれもおいしいですね。
でも、ゆばは・・・何ですか。
- 光岡 (母) 豆腐の兄弟ですね。
健康的な食べ物ですよ。
- 光岡 (父) 日光のどこに行きたいですか。
アシュリー 東照宮と華厳の滝が見たいです。
それから、中禅寺湖で散歩をしてボートに乗りたいです。
- 光岡 (父) たくさんありますね。
じゃ、早く食べて、行きましょう。

Formal Kana

- みつおか(はは) アシュリーさん、きらいなものはありますか。
アシュリー とくになにもありません。
なんでもたべます。
- みつおか(はは) それはよかった。
- みつおか(はは) なにもありませんが、どうぞ。
アシュリー あ、おそばですね。わたし、だいすきです。
いただきます。(eats soba)おいしい!
とてもおいしいです。
- みつおか(ちち) これもどうぞ。ゆばです。
にっこのゆばはゆうめいですよ。
それから、これは、こんにゃくです。

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

- アシュリー うーん。どれもおいしいですね。
でも、ゆばは・・・なんですか。
- みつおか(はは) どうふのきょうだいですね。
けんこうてきなたべものですよ。
- みつおか(ちち) につこうのどこにいきたいですか。
アシュリー どうしょうぐうとけごんのたきがみたいです。
それから、ちゅうぜんじこでさんぽをしてポートにのりたいたいです。
- みつおか(ちち) 。
たくさんありますね。
じゃ、はやくたべて、いきましよう。

Formal Romanization

- Mitsuoka(haha) Ashur -san, kirai na mono wa arimasu ka.
ashur Toku ni nani mo nai desu.
Nan demo tabemasu.
- Mitsuoka(haha) Sore wa yokatta.
- Mitsuoka(haha) Nani mo arimasen ga, d zo.
ashur A, o-soba desu ne. Watashi, daisuki desu.
Itadakimasu.(eats soba)
Oishii! Tottemo oishii desu.
- Mitsuoka(chichi) Kore mo d zo. Yuba desu.
ashur Nikk no yuba wa y mei desu yo.
Sore kara, kore wa, kon'nyaku desu.
n. Dore mo oishii desu ne.
Demo, yuba wa... nan desu ka.
- Mitsuoka(haha) T fu no ky dai desu ne.
Kenk -teki na tabemono desu yo.
- Mitsuoka(chichi) Nikk no doko ni ikitai desu ka.
ashur T sh g to Kegon no Taki ga mitai desu.
Sore kara, Ch zenji-ko de sanpo o shite b to ni noritai desu.
- Mitsuoka(chichi) Takusan arimasu ne.
Ja, hayaku tabete, ikimash .

English

Mrs. Mitsuoka Ashley, are there any foods you don't like?
 Ashley Not really.
 I'll eat anything.
 Mrs. Mitsuoka Oh, that's good.

Mrs. Mitsuoka It's not much, but here you are.
 Ashley Oh, it's soba, isn't it? I love soba!
 Itadakimasu. (eats soba)
 Yum! It's really good!

Mr. Mitsuoka Try some of this, too. It's yuba.
 Yuba from Nikko is famous.
 And also, this is kon'nyaku.

Ashley Mmm, they're all good!
 But...what's yuba?

Mrs. Mitsuoka It's like a cousin of tofu.
 It's a very healthy food.

Mr. Mitsuoka Where do you want to go in Nikko?
 Ashley I want to see Tosh g and Kegon no Taki.
 And I also want to take a walk around Ch zenjiko and ride in a boat.

Mr. Mitsuoka That's quite a lot.
 Well then, let's eat quickly and go!



Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
特に	とくに	toku ni	especially
早く	はやく	hayaku	fast, quickly, soon
とっても	とっても	tottemo	very, awfully
こんにゃく	こんにゃく	kon'nyaku	konnyaku, devil's tongue
健康的	けんこうてき	kenk -teki	healthy; Adj(na)
嫌い	きらい	kirai	dislikable, hate ; Adj(na)
有名	ゆうめい	y mei	famous ; Adj(na)
豆腐	とうふ	t fu	tofu, bean-curd
兄弟	きょうだい	ky dai	siblings, brothers and sisters
食べ物	たべもの	tabemono	food

たくさん	たくさん	takusan	a lot, many, much
ボート	ボート	boat	boat
散歩	さんぽ	sanpo	walk, stroll
見る	みる	miru	to see, to watch, to look ; V2

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

特に日本のマヨネーズが好きです。	I especially like Japanese mayonnaise.
早く家に帰りたいです。	I want to go home soon.
とっても楽しかったです。	It was so much fun.
こんにゃくは健康的な食べ物です。	Konnyaku is a healthy food.
健康的なものを食べたい。	I want to eat healthy.
私は好き嫌いがありません。	I'm not picky.
Ryo Ishikawa は有名なプロゴルファーです。	Ryo Ishikawa is a famous golfer.
どこでその豆腐を買いましたか。	Where did you get that tofu?
兄弟がいますか。	Do you have any brothers or sisters?
嫌いな食べ物は何かですか。	What food do you hate?
水をたくさん飲んでください。	Please drink a lot of water.
公園でボートに乗りませんか。	Would you like to ride a boat in the park?
よく、散歩します。	I often take walks.
電車の中から富士山を見ました。	I saw Mt. Fuji from the train.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #26 - The Best Japanese Dish You'll Ever Have

じゃ、早く食べて、行きましょう。

Ja, hayaku tabete, ikimash .

"Well then, let's eat quickly and go!"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to use **nani mo** (何も) and **nan demo** (何でも)

Learn how to combine two verbs using the **te**-form

Learn how to create adverbs

Nani mo (何も) and **nan demo** (何でも)

In the dialogue, we saw the question word nan/nani (何) followed by the particles mo (も) and demo (でも) to create the words nani mo (何も) and nan demo (何でも). Let's check the meanings of these words and look at other words we can create using these same patterns.

When we attach the particle mo (も) to question words such as nani (何), dare (誰), or doko (どこ), and we use it in a negative statement, we can translate [question word] + mo as "not any...."

[Question word] + mo + [negative statement] = "not any ___"

Question Word	Question Word + mo (も)	English
何 nani	何も nani mo	nothing
どこ doko	どこも doko mo	-nowhere (in negative sentence) -everywhere (in affirmative sentence)
誰 dare	誰も dare mo	-no one (in negative sentence) -everyone (in affirmative sentence)
どれ dore	どれも dore mo	-none (in negative sentence) -everything (in affirmative sentence)

Examples From the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー:(嫌いな食べ物は) 特に何もありません。
Ashur : (Kirai na tabemono wa) toku ni nani mo nai desu.
Ashley: (literally) "There's nothing I don't like."
2. アシュリー:うーん。どれもおいしいですね。
Ashur : n. Dore mo oishii desu ne.
Ashley: "Mmm, they're all good!"

A question word followed by demo(でも) means "any."



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

[Question word] + demo = "any ~"

Question Word	Question Word + demo(でも)	English
何 nan	何でも nan demo	anything, no matter what it is
いつ itsu	いつでも itsu demo	anytime, no matter when it is
どこ doko	どこでも doko demo	anywhere, no matter where it is
誰 dare	誰でも dare demo	anyone, no matter who it is
どれ dore	どれでも dore demo	no matter which it is

Example From the Dialogue:

アシュリー: 何でも食べます。

Ashur : Nan demo tabemasu.

Ashley: "I'll eat anything."

Another Example:

いつでも来てください。

Itsu demo kite kudasai.

"Please come anytime."

Now let's compare the following sentences:

私は何でも食べます。 Watashi wa nan demo tabemasu. "I'll eat anything."

私は何も食べません。 Watashi wa nani mo tabemasen. "I won't eat anything."

Combining Two Verbs Using the Te-form

In this lesson, you will learn how to combine two or more verbs. To express a succession of actions or events, you must change all verbs except the final one into the te-form. In this case, it is similar to using "and" in English to join multiple verbs ("eat and drink," "run and

jump").

[te-form of a verb of first action] + [verb of second action]

First Action	Second Action	Combined with te-form
ランチを買う ranchi o kau "buy lunch"	食べる taberu "eat"	ランチを 買って 食べる ranchi o katte taberu "buy lunch and eat it"
お風呂に入る o-furo ni hairu "take a bath"	寝る neru "sleep"	お風呂に 入って 寝る o-furo ni haitte neru "take a bath and go to sleep"
帰る kaeru "go home"	テレビを見る terebi o miru "watch TV"	帰って テレビを見る kaette terebi o miru "go home and watch TV"

The tense of the final verb determines the tense of the whole sentence. For example, if the final verb is in the past tense, then all of the actions mentioned took place in succession in the past. If the final verb is in the present/future tense, all of the actions mentioned will take place in the present or future. We can even use the verbs expressing desire as well as volitional verbs, as we see in the example sentences from the dialogue below.

8

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: 中禅寺湖で散歩をしてボートに乗りたいです。
Ashur : Ch senji-ko de sanpo shite b to ni noritai desu.
Ashley: "And I also want to take a walk around Ch senjiko and ride in a boat."
2. 光岡(父): じゃ、早く**食べて**、行きましょう。
Mitsuoka (chichi): Ja, hayaku tabete, ikimash .
Mr. Mitsuoka: "Well then, let's eat quickly and go!"

Other Examples:

1. 明日、築地に行って、すしを**食べます**。
Ashita, Tsukiji ni itte, sushi o **tabemasu**.
"Tomorrow I will go to Tsukiji and eat sushi."

昨日、築地に行って、すしを食べました。

Kin , Tsukiji ni itte, sushi o **tabemashita**.

"Yesterday, I went to Tsukiji and ate sushi."

Creating Adverbs From Adjectives

Let's take a look at how to form adverbs from adjectives.

For i-adjectives:

1. Remove the final -i (い)
2. Add -ku (<)

i-adjective	Meaning	Adverb	Meaning
早い hayai	early, quick	早く hayaku	quickly
安い yasui	cheap	安く yasuku	cheaply
楽しい tanoshii	enjoyable	楽しく tanoshiku	enjoyably
強い tsuyoi	strong	強く tsuyoku	strongly

Example from the Dialogue:

光岡(父) : じゃ、早く食べて、行きましょう。

Mitsuoka (chichi): Ja, hayaku tabete, ikimash .

Mr. Mitsuoka: Well then, let's eat quickly and go!

For na-adjectives:

1. Change the na (な) to ni (に)

na-adjective	Meaning	Adverb	Meaning
まっすぐ(な) massugu (na)	straight	まっすぐに massugu ni	straight (as adverb)
しずか(な)	quiet	しずかに	quietly

shizuka (na)		shizuka ni	
かんたん(な)	simple	かんたんに	simply
kantan (na)		kantan ni	

Other Examples:

しずかに話してください。

Shizuka ni hanashite kudasai.

"Please speak quietly."

[Vocab Usage: Itadakimasu](#)

Itadakimasu (いただきます) - In the dialog, Ashley said itadakimasu (いただきます) before eating the meal that Mrs. Mitsuoka prepared. This phrase is commonly said before eating a meal that someone else has prepared for you. Itadakimasu is actually a humble verb that means "to receive", so this phrase literally means "I am about to receive", but a more practical translation would be something similar to "Thank you for the meal".

10

Cultural Insight

Nikko

Nikko is a very popular tourist destination located roughly two hours north of Tokyo by train. Nikko is home to the famous Toshogu Shrine, a lavishly decorated shrine where Tokugawa Ieyasu, the leader of the Tokugawa Shogunate, is buried. Nikko is also home to Kegon no Taki ("Kegon Waterfall"), one of the highest waterfalls in Japan, as well as Chuzenji-ko ("Lake Chuzenji"). Nikko is an especially popular destination in October and November, when you can see the colorful autumn foliage.



Gengo Japanese S1

Joking in Japanese - Do You Think This is Funny?

27

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	4
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	6
Cultural Insight	12

Formal Kanji

豊田一郎 ごめん、アシュリーさん、待った？
アシュリー いえ、私も今着きました。
豊田一郎 ここ、いい、お店だね。
 どうして、知っているの？
アシュリー 内緒です。
 タクシーの運転手さんから聞きました。
豊田一郎 で、日光はどうだった。
アシュリー よかったですよ。
 二日間ホームステイしました。
 あ、これ、日光のお土産です。
豊田一郎 え？ありがとうございます。うれしいなあ。
 へー。東照宮に行ったの？
アシュリー はい、とても立派で、びっくりしました。
 それから、華嚴の滝に行ったり、散歩したり、ボートに乗ったり
 しました。
 本当に楽しかったです。
豊田一郎 他に、日本で何をしたの？
アシュリー 会社の人と居酒屋に行ったり、花火を見たりしました。
豊田一郎 いいなあ……。今年、僕、花火見なかったよ。。。
 で、いつまで日本にいるの。
アシュリー あと、一週間です。
 明日、会社に行って、働きます。
 月曜日から木曜日まで、四日間仕事をします。
 それから、三日間、富士山に行ったり、築地に行ったり、買い物
 をしたりします。

Formal Kana

とよたいちろう ごめん、アシュリーさん、まった？
アシュリー いえ、わたしもいまつきました。
とよたいちろう ここ、いい、おみせだね。
 どうして、知っているの？
アシュリー ないしょです。
 タクシーのうんてんしゅさんからききました。
とよたいちろう で、にっこうはどうだった。
アシュリー よかったですよ。

- とよたいちろう ふつかかんホームステイしました。
アシュリー あ、これ、にっこうのおみやげです。
とよたいちろう え？ありがとう。うれしいなあ。
アシュリー へー。とうしょうぐうにいったの？
とよたいちろう はい、とてもりっぱで、びっくりしました。
アシュリー それから、けごんのたきにいたり、さんぽしたり、ポートにの
たりしました。
とよたいちろう ほんとうにたのしかったです。
アシュリー ほかに、にほんでなにをしたの？
とよたいちろう かいしゃのひとといざかやにいたり、はなびをみたりしまし
た。
アシュリー いいなあ……。ことし、ぼく、はなびみなかったよ。。。
とよたいちろう で、いつまでにほんにいるの。
アシュリー あと、いっしゅうかんです。
とよたいちろう あした、かいしゃにいて、はたらきます。
アシュリー げつようびからもくようびまで、よっかかんしごとをします。
とよたいちろう それから、みっかかん、ふじさんにいたり、つきじにいたり
、かいものをしたりします。

Formal Romanization

Toyota Ichir	Gomen, Ashur -san, matta?
Ashur	Ie, watashi mo ima tsukimashita.
Toyota Ichir	Koko, ii, o-mise da ne. D shite, shitte iru no?
Ashur	Naisho desu.(laughs) Takush no untenshu-san kara kikimashita.
Toyota Ichir	De, Nikk wa d datta.
Ashur	Yokatta desu yo. Futsuka-kan h musutei shimashita. A, kore, Nikk no o-miyage desu.
Toyota Ichir	E? Arigat . Ureshii n . H . T sh g ni itta no?
Ashur	Hai, totemo rippa de, bikkuri shimashita. Sore kara, Kegon no Taki ni ittari, sanpo shitari, b to ni nottari shimashita. Hont ni tanoshikatta desu.
Toyota Ichir	Hoka ni, Nihon de nani o shita no?
Ashur	Kaisha no hito to izakaya ni ittari, hanabi o mitari shimashita.

Toyota Ichir li n Kotoshi, boku, hanabi minakatta yo...
De, itsu made Nihon ni iru no.
Ashur Ato, issh -kan desu.
Ashita, kaisha ni itte, hatarakimasu.
Getsuy bi kara mokuy bi made, yokka-kan shigoto o shimasu.
Sore kara, mikka-kan, Fuji-san ni ittari, Tsukiji ni ittari, kaimono o
shitari shimasu.

English

Ichiro Toyota Sorry Ashley, did you wait long?
Ashley No, I just got here myself.
Ichiro Toyota This is a great restaurant.
How do you know about it?
Ashley It's a secret.
I heard about it from a taxi driver.
Ichiro Toyota So, how was Nikko?
Ashley It was great!
I did a homestay for two days.
Oh, here's a gift from Nikko.
Ichiro Toyota Oh? Thanks! I'm so happy.
Oh, you went to Toshogu?
Ashley Yes, it was really magnificent, I was surprised!
And then I went to the Kegon Waterfall, took a walk, rode in a
boat, and more.
It was really fun.
Ichiro Toyota What else have you done in Japan?
Ashley I went to an izakaya with my coworkers, saw fireworks, and so
on.
Ichiro Toyota How nice...I didn't see any fireworks this year.
So, until when are you in Japan?
Ashley I have one more week.
Tomorrow I'm going to the office to work.
I'll be working for four days from Monday to Thursday.
And then, for three days I'm going to go to Mt. Fuji, going to
Tsukiji, and going shopping and stuff.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
店	みせ	mise	shop, store
どうして	どうして	d shite	why, how
知る	しる	shiru	to know, to understand; V1
嬉しい	うれしい	ureshii	happy, glad, Adj(i)
居酒屋	いざかや	izaka-ya	bar, pub
着く	つく	tsuku	to arrive, to reach ; V1
内緒	ないしょ	naisho	secrecy, secret
聞く	きく	kiku	to listen, to ask; V1
立派	りっぱ	rippa	splendid, magnificent ; Adj(na)
びっくり	びっくり	bikkuri	surprise
他に	ほかに	hoka ni	in addition, besides, other
働く	はたらく	hataraku	to work; V1
いい	いい	ii	good, nice, pleasant, fine; Adj(i)
土産	みやげ	miyage	souvenir, present

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

この店が好きです。	I like this store.
どうして、日本に行きたいですか。	Why do you want to go to Japan?
あの人を知っていますか。	Do you know that person over there?
嬉しいニュースがあります。	I have good news.
日本の居酒屋が大好きです。	I love Japanese-style bars.
今、駅に着きました。	I just now got to the station.
それは内緒です。	It's a secret.
よく日本の歌をききますか。	Do you often listen to Japanese songs?
エイブラハム・リンカーンは立派な人でした。	Abraham Lincoln was a magnificent person.
びっくりした！	You scared me! (I'm surprised.)
他に何をしたいですか。	What else would you like to do?
朝から昼まで働きます。	I work from morning to noon.
いい天気ですね。	The weather is nice, isn't it?
お土産を買いました。	I bought souvenirs.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #27 - Joking in Japanese - Do You Think This is Funny?

他に、日本で何をしたの？

Hoka ni, Nihon de nani o shita no?

"What else have you done in Japan?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to make the affirmative past tense of a verb ("I went")

Learn how to make the negative past tense of a verb ("I didn't go")

Learn how to express the concept of "and so on" using the *tetari* form

Making the Affirmative Past Tense ("I Went")

Let's take a look at how to create the past tense of both formal and informal verbs.

Formal

To turn a verb that is in the *masu* form into past tense, simply replace *-masu* (-ます) with *-mashita* (-ました).

masu Form	-mashita	Translation
飲みます nomimasu	飲みました nomimashita	"drank"
食べます tabemasu	食べました tabemashita	"ate"
します shimasu	しました shimashita	"did"

1. アシュリー: タクシーの運転手さんから聞きました。
Ashur: Takushi no untenshu-san kara kikimashita.
Ashley: "I heard about it from a taxi driver."
2. アシュリー: 二日間ホームステイしました。
Ashur: Futsuka-kan h musutei shimashita.



Ashley: I did a homestay for two days.

Informal

In Lesson 23, we learned how to make the te-form of a verb. It's important to keep this in mind when we create the past tense. To create the past tense:

1. Conjugate the verb to te-form
2. Change the final te (て) to ta (た)*

*In the case of verbs whose dictionary form ends in -bu or -gu, we change de (で) to da (だ)

Dictionary Form	Te-Form	Ta-Form	Translation
行く iku	行って itte	行った itta	"went"
待つ matsu	待って matte	待った matta	"waited"
死ぬ shinu	死んで shinde	死んだ shinda	"died"
飲む nomu	飲んで nonde	飲んだ nonda	"drank"
泳ぐ oyogu	泳いで oyoide	泳いだ oyoida	"swam"
呼ぶ yobu	呼んで yonde	呼んだ yonda	"called"
帰る kaeru	帰って kaette	帰った kaetta	"returned"
食べる taberu	食べて tabete	食べた tabeta	"ate"
する suru	して shite	した shita	"did"
来る kuru	来て kite	来た kita	"came"

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. 豊田一郎:ごめん、アシュリーさん、待った？
Toyota Ichir : Gomen, Ashur -san, matta?
Ichiro Toyota: "Sorry, Ashley, did you wait long?"

豊田一郎:他に、日本で何をしたの？

Toyota Ichir : Hoka ni, Nihon de nani o shita no?

Ichiro Toyota: "What else have you done in Japan?"

Making the Negative Past Tense ("I Didn't Go")

Now let's take a look at how to create the negative past tense of both formal and informal verbs.

Formal

To turn a verb that is in the masu form into negative past tense, simply replace -masen (-ません) with -masen deshita (-ませんでした).

-masen (-ません) -masen deshita (-ませんでした)

-masen Form	-masen deshita	Translation
飲みません nomimasen	飲みませんでした nomimasen deshita	"didn't drink"
食べません tabemasen	食べませんでした tabemasen deshita	"didn't eat"
しません shimasen	しませんでした shimasen deshita	"didn't do"

Example:

今朝朝ごはんを食べませんでした。

Kesa asagohan o tabemasen deshita.

"I didn't eat breakfast this morning."

Informal

To turn an informal negative verb into past tense, simply replace the final -i (い) with -katta (かった). You might notice that this way of conjugating is the same as i-adjectives.

-i (-い) -katta (-かった)



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Informal Negative	Informal Negative Past	Translation
行かない ikanai	行かなかった ikanakatta	"didn't go"
食べない tabenai	食べなかった tabenakatta	"didn't eat"
見ない minai	見なかった minakatta	"didn't see"
待たない matanai	待たなかった matanakatta	"didn't wait"
死なない shinanai	死ななかった shinanakatta	"didn't die"
飲まない nomanai	飲まなかった nomanakatta	"didn't drink"
泳がない oyoganai	泳がなかった oyoganakatta	"didn't swim"
呼ばない yobanai	呼ばなかった yobanakatta	"didn't call"
帰らない kaeranai	帰らなかった kaeranakatta	"didn't return"
しない shinai	しなかった shinakatta	"didn't do"
来ない konai	来なかった konakatta	"didn't come"

Example from the Dialogue:

豊田一郎: 今年、僕(は)花火(を)見なかったよ。

Toyota Ichir : Kotoshi, boku (wa) hanabi (o) minakatta yo.

Ichiro Toyota: "I didn't see any fireworks this year."

"And So On...": Using the -tari form

In the last lesson, we learned how to use join verbs to talk about multiple actions using the te-form:

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

- 私は買い物をしてランチを食べた。
Watashi wa kaimono o shite ranchi o tabeta.
"I went shopping and ate lunch."

In this sentence, we join both verbs by putting the first verb (in this case suru) in the te-form. This sentence implies that we only did two things: went shopping, and ate lunch.

Now, what if we want to convey the idea that we did these things and more without going into the details? To do this, we can use the -tari form. We use the -tari form to list an incomplete set of actions or states. We can use this form by adding -ri to the end of the informal past form of all verbs in the sentence and ending it with a form of the verb suru. Let's rewrite the sentence we just looked at:

- 私は買い物をした^りランチを食べ^{たり}した。
Watashi wa kaimono o shitari ranchi o tabetari shita.
"I went shopping, ate lunch, and so on."

[Vari + tari suru]

Dictionary Form	Informal Past	Add ri	-tari Form
行く iku	行った itta	+ り + ri	行ったり ittari
遊ぶ asobu	遊んだ asonda	+ り + ri	遊んだり asondari
食べる taberu	食べた tabeta	+ り + ri	食べたり tabetari
する suru	した shita	+ り + ri	したり shitari
来る kuru	来た kita	+ り + ri	来たり kitari

The tense of the sentence is determined by the tense of the suru (する) at the end. For example, if the final suru (する) is in the past tense form shita (した), then all actions mentioned took place in the past. Let's compare some different examples:

Future

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

日本で寺に行ったり観光したりする。

Nihon de tera ni ittari kank shitari **suru**.

"In Japan, **I'm going to** go to temples, go sightseeing, and so on."

Past

去年日本で寺に行ったり観光したりした。

Kyonen nihon de tera ni ittari kank shitari **shita**.

"Last year in Japan **I went** to temples, went sightseeing, and so on."

Desire

日本で寺に行ったり観光したりしたい。

Nihon de tera ni ittari kank shitari **shitai**.

"In Japan, **I want to** go to temples, go sightseeing, and so on."

Examples from the Dialog:

- アシュリー: 華巖の滝に行ったり、散歩したり、ボートに乗ったりしました。

Ashur : Kegon no Taki ni ittari, sanpo shitari, b to ni nottari shimashita.

Ashley: "I went to the Kegon Waterfall, took a walk, rode in a boat, and more."

- アシュリー: 会社の人と居酒屋に行ったり、花火を見たりしました。

Ashur : Kaisha no hito to izakaya ni ittari, hanabi o mitari shimashita.

Ashley: "I went to an izakaya with my coworkers, saw fireworks, and so on."

- アシュリー: 三日間、富士山に行ったり、築地に行ったり、買い物をしたりします。

Ashur : Mikka-kan, Fuji-san ni ittari, Tsukiji ni ittari, kaimono o shitari shimasu.

Ashley: "For three days, I'm going to go to Mt. Fuji, go to Tukiji, go shopping, and stuff."

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw some phrases that express duration of time:

三日間 - mikka-kan - "three days"

四日間 - yokka-kan - "four days"

For more detailed information on expressing duration of time, please check the following Appendix lessons: Time Duration 1: Hours and Minutes (Appendix #5) and Time Duration 2: Days, Weeks, Months, and Years (Appendix #6)

Cultural Insight

Izakaya

An izakaya refers to a Japanese drinking establishment that is similar to a bar but also serves food along with the drinks. The food at izakaya is usually more substantial than that served at regular bars. While there are some high-end izakaya, the majority of izakaya are very reasonable and have a casual atmosphere. Izakaya can basically be divided into two groups: large izakaya that are part of a chain; and small, locally-owned izakaya. When you go to a large chain izakaya you are usually socializing with the group that you are with, but at a smaller izakaya you can meet and socialize with other customers and locals.



Gengo Japanese S1

How to See All the Important Sites in the Shortest Amount of Time

28

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	9

Formal Kanji

- アシュリー あの...ちょっと、質問をしてもいいですか。
このレッツエンジョイ築地ツアーはどのくらいかかりますか。
受付 お金は、お一人様、一万円かかります。
時間は五時間かかります。
朝七時から、大体昼12時までです。
アシュリー ガイドさんは英語ができますか。
受付 はい。もちろん、できますよ。
アシュリー じゃ、今週の土曜日のツアー、予約できますか。
受付 少々お待ちください。
はい。まだ、できます。
では、こちらに、お名前、ご連絡先をお願いします。
アシュリー ペンを借りてもいいですか。
受付 はい、どうぞ。(Ashley fills out the form)
では、29日土曜日、午前6時50分に築地郵便局の前に来てく
ださい。
これは、地図です。
アシュリー ありがとうございます。
あのぉ...。品川から、築地までどのくらいかかりますか。
受付 30分くらいかかります。
アシュリー あの、築地で写真をとってもいいですか。
受付 ちょっと、わからないですね。ガイドにきいてください。

Formal Kana

- アシュリー あの...ちょっと、しつもんをしてもいいですか。
このレッツエンジョイツキツアーはどのくらいかかりますか。
うけつけ おかねは、おひとりさま、いちまんえんかかります。
じかんはごじかんかかります。
あさしちじから、だいたいひるじゅうにじまでです。
アシュリー ガイドさんはえいごができますか。
うけつけ はい。もちろん、できますよ。
アシュリー じゃ、こんしゅうのどようびのツアー、よやくできますか。
うけつけ しょうしょうおまちください。
はい。まだ、できます。
では、こちらに、おなまえ、ごれんらくさきをおねがいします。
アシュリー ペンをかりてもいいですか。

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

うけつけ	はい、どうぞ。(Ashley fills out the form) では、にじゅうくにちどようび、ごぜんろくじごじゅうつぷんにつ きじゅうびんきょくのまえにきてください。 これは、ちずです。
アシュリー	ありがとうございます。 あのぉ...。しながわから、つきじまでどのくらいかかりますか。
うけつけ	さんじゅうつぷんくらいかかります。
アシュリー	あの、つきじでしゃしんをとってもいいですか。
うけつけ	ちょっと、わからないですね。ガイドにきいてください。

Formal Romanization

Ashur	Ano... chotto, shitsumon o shite mo ii desu ka. Kono Rettsu Enjoi Tsukiji tsu wa dono kurai kakarimasu ka.
Uketsuke	O-kane wa, o-hitori-sama, ichiman-en kakarimasu. Jikan wa go-jikan kakarimasu. Asa shichi-ji kara, daitai hiru j ni-ji made desu.
Ashur	Gaido-san wa eigo ga dekimasu ka.
Uketsuke	Hai. Mochiron, dekimasu yo.
Ashur	Ja, konsh no doy bi no tsu , yoyaku dekimasu ka.
Uketsuke	Sh sh o-machi kudasai. Hai. Mada, dekimasu. Dewa, kochira ni, o-namae, go-renrakusaki o onegai shimasu.
Ashur	Pen o karite mo ii desu ka.
Uketsuke	Hai, d zo. (Ashley fills out the form) Dewa, ni-j ku-nichi doy bi, gozen roku-ji goju-ppun ni Tsukiji y binkyoku no mae ni kite kudasai. Kore wa, chizu desu.
Ashur	Arigat gozaimasu. An Shinagawa kara, Tsukiji made dono kurai kakarimasu ka.
Uketsuke	San-ju-ppun kurai kakarimasu.
Ashur	Ano, Tsukiji de shashin o totte mo ii desu ka.
Uketsuke	Chotto, wakaranai desu ne. Gaido ni kiite kudasai.

English

Ashley	Um...can I ask a question?
--------	----------------------------



Receptionist How much does the “ Let's Enjoy Tsukiji Tour ” cost?
 Money-wise, it costs 10,000 yen for one person.
 Time-wise, it takes five hours.
 It's from seven in the morning to about twelve noon.

Ashley Can the guide speak English?
 Receptionist Yes, of course.

Ashley Okay, then can I make a reservation for the tour on Saturday of this week?
 Receptionist Please wait one moment.
 Yes, you can still do that.
 Please write your name and contact information here.

Ashley May I borrow a pen?
 Receptionist Yes, here you are. (Ashley fills out the form)
 Okay, on Saturday the 29th, please come to the Tsukiji Post Office at six-fifty AM.
 Here's a map.

Ashley Thank you very much.
 Um, how long does it take from Shinagawa to Tsukiji?
 Receptionist It takes about thirty minutes.

Ashley And, can I take pictures at Tsukiji?
 Receptionist I'm not sure. Please ask the guide.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
どのくらい	どのくらい	dono kurai	how long, how much...
かかる	かかる	kakaru	to take (time, money); V1
大体	だいたい	daitai	about, approximately
まだ	まだ	mada	yet, still
ペン	ペン	pen	pen
お金	おかね	o-kane	money
ガイド	ガイド	gaido	tour guide
連絡先	れんらくさき	renrakusaki	contact address
借りる	かりる	kariru	to borrow, to rent; V2
質問	しつもん	shitsumon	question, inquiry
少々	しょうしょう	sh sh	a little, small quantity
位	くらい / ぐらい	kurai/gurai	approximately, about
郵便局	ゆうびんきょく	y binkyoku	post office



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

だいたい	だいたい	ditai	about, approximately
もちろん	もちろん	mochiron	Of course.
くらい	くらい	kurai	approximately, about

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

新宿から渋谷までどのくらいですか。
一時間位かかります。
日本からタイまで大体六時間です。

How far is it from Shinjuku to Shibuya?
It takes about an hour.
It takes about 6 hours to get to Thailand from Japan.

まだ帰りません。
そのペンは誰のですか。
お金がありません。
下山さんは観光ガイドです。
アシュリーさんの連絡先がわかりますか。
携帯を借りたいです。
すみません。質問があります。
少々お酒を飲みました。
家から会社まで二十分位です。

I won't go home yet.
Whose pen is it?
I don't have any money.
Mr. Shimoyama is a tour guide.
Do you know Ashley's contact address?
I'd like to rent a cell phone.
Excuse me. I have a question.
I drank a little alcohol.
It takes about 20 minutes from my house to the company.

まっすぐ行って、郵便局で右に曲がる。
東京から新潟まで、新幹線でだいたい一万円
です。
もちろん、行きます。
1000円くらいのシャーペンを買った。

Go straight and turn right at the post office.
It costs about 10,000 yen for a bullet train from Tokyo to Niigata.
Of course, I'm going.
I bought a mechanical pencil which costs about 1000 yen.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #28 - How to See All the Important Sites in the Shortest Amount of Time

ガイドさんは英語ができますか。

Gaido-san wa eigo ga dekimasu ka.

"Can the guide speak English?"

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to ask for permission with *te mo ii desu ka* (-てもいいですか)

Learn how to use the word *dekiru* (できる) to talk about what you can do

Learn how to use the word *akaru* (かかる) to ask about time and cost

Asking for Permission

We use the phrase *-te mo ii desu ka* (~てもいいですか) when asking the listener for permission to do something. This consists of a verb in the *te*-form plus particle *mo* (も), the adjective *ii* (いい), the copula *desu* (です), and the question marker *ka* (か).

[*te*-form of verb + *mo ii desu ka?*] = "May I ...?"

Original Phrase	Translation	Te-form of Verb もいいですか?	Translation
聞く Kiku	to ask	聞いてもいいですか? Kiite mo ii desu ka?	May I ask something?
タバコをすう Tabako o su	to smoke	タバコをすってもいいですか? Tabako o sutte mo ii desu ka?	May I smoke?
テレビを見る Terebi o miru	to watch TV	テレビを見てもいいですか? Terebi o mite mo ii desu ka?	May I watch TV?
辞書をかりる Jisho o kariru	to borrow one's dictionary	辞書をかりてもいいですか? Jisho o karite mo ii desu ka?	May I borrow your dictionary?

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: ペンを借りてもいいですか。
Ashur : Pen o karite mo ii desu ka.
Ashley: "May I borrow a pen?"
2. アシュリー: 写真をとってもいいですか。
Ashur : Shashin o totte mo ii desu ka.
Ashley: "Can I take pictures?"

We use the phrase *-te mo ii desu* (~てもいいです) when we give the listener permission to do something.



[te-form of verb + mo ii desu] = "You may..."

Note, however, that this construction has the potential to sound a little patronizing. If someone asks you a -te mo ii desu ka question, it would be better to just reply with a simple yes or no.

Using Dekiru to Talk About What You Can Do

Dekiru (できる) is the potential form of the verb suru (する), and has the meaning of "to be able to do." In some cases, the nuance is that someone is good at something, especially when used together with adverbs such as yoku (よく, "well").

[(Topic wa) Subject ga dekiru]

Note that when using dekiru (できる), the particle ga (が) is usually used to mark the direct object, rather than the direct object marker o (を).

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: ガイドさんは英語ができますか。
Ashur : Gaido-san wa eigo ga dekimasu ka.
Ashley: "Can the guide speak English?"
2. アシュリー: じゃ、今週の土曜日のツアー、予約できますか。
Ashur : Ja, konsh no doyobi no tsu , yoyaku dekimasu ka.
Ashley: "Okay, then can I make a reservation for the tour on Saturday of this week?"

Other Examples:

1. 私は料理ができる。
Watashi wa ry ri ga dekiru.
"I can cook."
2. 彼はスポーツがよくできる。



Kare wa sup^{tsu} ga yoku dekiru.

"He is good at sports."

Using Kakaru / Kakarimasu to Talk About Time and Cost

Kakarimasu (かかります) is the masu form of the verb kakaru (かかる). Kakaru (かかる) means that something takes time or costs money.

Question:	Translation
[Dono kurai/Dono gurai] + kakarimasu ka?	
どのくらいかかりますか。 Dono kurai kakarimasu ka?	"How much does it <u>cost</u> ?" "How long does it <u>take</u> ?"

Since we can use kakarimasu with both time and money, there is a good possibility that there will be confusion if you don't specify what you are talking about. To avoid confusion, you can insert the topic in the beginning of the sentence.

1. **お金は**、どのくらいかかりますか。

O-kane wa, dono kurai kakarimasu ka.

"How much does it cost?"

2. **時間は**、どのくらいかかりますか。

Jikan wa, dono kurai kakarimasu ka.

"How long does it take?"

Affirmative:	Translation
[amount of money/duration of time] + kakarimasu	
千円かかります。 Sen-en kakarimasu.	It <u>costs</u> one thousand yen.
一時間かかります。 Ichi-jikan kakarimasu.	It <u>takes</u> an hour.

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: このレッツエンジョイ築地ツアーはどのくらいかかりますか。

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Ashur : Kono Rettsu Enjoi Tsukiji Tsu wa dono kurai kakarimasu ka.

Ashley: "How much does the Let's Enjoy Tsukiji Tour cost?"

- 受付: お金は、お一人様、一万円かかります。

Uketsuke: O-kane wa, o-hitori-sama, ichiman-en kakarimasu.

Receptionist: "Money-wise, it costs 10,000 yen for one person."

- 受付: 時間は五時間かかります。

Uketsuke: Jikan wa go-jikan kakarimasu.

Receptionist: "Time-wise, it takes five hours."

Vocab Usage: Please wait one moment.

少々お待ちください。[sh -sh o-machi kudasai.] "Please wait one moment."

- This phrase is used to politely ask someone to wait. It is often used in business situations or when speaking to a customer, as seen in the dialog when the receptionist uses it with Ashley.

In the Appendix

In this lesson, we saw a phrase that expresses time duration:

五時間 go-jikan - "five hours"

For more detailed information on expressing time duration, please check the following Appendix lessons: Time Duration 1: Hours and Minutes (Appendix #5) and Time Duration 2: Days, Weeks, Months, and Years (Appendix #6)

Cultural Insight

Tsukiji Fish Market

Tsukiji Fish Market is located in central Tokyo and is one of the largest fish markets in the world, handling over 2,000 tons of fish and other seafood a day that comes in from all over the world. Tsukiji Fish Market has become a major tourist attraction among Japanese and foreign visitors, with many visiting the market to watch the tuna auctions that take place at



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

around five in the morning. If you visit Tsukiji Fish Market, don't forget to stop by one of the many restaurants that surround the market where you can have some of the freshest sushi available!



10



Gengo Japanese S1

Master Speaking on the Phone and Put All of Your Japanese Friends a
Touch Away

29

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	3
Vocabulary	3
Grammar Points	4
Cultural Insight	7

Formal Kanji

アシュリー (Telephone) 光岡れい携帯	090-9876-5432 はい、光岡です。 今、電話に出ることができません。 メッセージをお願いします。
(ピー) アシュリー	もしもし、アシュリーです。 色々ありがとうございました。 おかげ様で、出張を楽しむことができました。 皆さんに会うことができ、よかったです。 お父さんとお母さんによろしく伝えてください。 明日、11時の飛行機でニューヨークに帰ります。 ぜひ、ニューヨークに来てくださいね。 またメールします。お元気で。さようなら。

Formal Kana

アシュリー (Telephone) みつおかれいけ いたい	ぜろ きゅう ぜろ の きゅう はち なな ろく の ご よん さん に はい、みつおかです。 いま、でんわにでることができません。 メッセージを おねがいします。
(ピー) アシュリー	もしもし、アシュリーです。 いろいろ ありがとう ございました。 おかげさまで、しゅっちょうをたのしむことができました。 みなさんに あうことができ、よかったです。 おとうさんと おかあさんに よろしく つたえてください。 あした、じゅういちじの ひこうきで ニューヨークに かえり ます。 ぜひ、ニューヨークに きてくださいね。 また メールします。おげんきで。さようなら。



Formal Romanization

Ashur (Telephone) Mitsuoka Rei keitai	Zero ky zero no ky hachi nana roku no go yon san ni Hai, Mitsuoka desu. Ima, denwa ni deru koto ga dekimasen. Mess ji o onegai shimasu.
(p) Ashur	Moshimoshi, Ashur desu. Iroiro arigat gozaimashita. Okage-sama de, shucch o tanoshimu koto ga dekimashita. Mina-san ni au koto ga dekite, yokatta desu. O-t -san to o-k -san ni yoroshiku tsutaete kudasai. Ashita, j ichi-ji no hik ki de Ny Y ku ni kaerimasu. Zehi, Ny Y ku ni kite kudasai ne. Mata m ru shimasu. O-genki de. Say nara.

English

Ashley (Telephone) Rei Mitsuoka's cell phone	090-9876-5432 This is Mitsuoka. I can't answer the phone right now. Please leave a message.
(beep) Ashley	Hello, this is Ashley. Thank you so much for everything. Thanks to you, I was able to enjoy my business trip. I'm so glad to have met everyone. Please say hello to your father and mother for me. I'm going back to New York tomorrow on an eleven o ' clock flight. Please come to New York! I'll e-mail you. Take care. Goodbye.

Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
会う	あう	au	to meet; V1
お元気で。	おげんきで。	O-genki de.	Take care.
さようなら	さようなら	say nara	Good bye.
電話に出る	でんわにでる	denwa ni deru	to answer the phone; V2
伝える	つたえる	tsutaeru	to pass on; V2
メッセージ	メッセージ	mess ji	message
楽しむ	たのしむ	tanoshimu	to enjoy oneself ; V1
よろしく	よろしく	yoroshiku	best regards
色々	いろいろ	iroiro	various ; Adj(na)
飛行機	ひこうき	hik ki	airplane
ぜひ	ぜひ	zehi	certainly, without fail

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

明日、彼と会います。	I'll meet him tomorrow.
さようなら。お元気で。	Goodbye. Take care.
さようなら、また、明日。	Good bye, see you tomorrow.
電話に出てください。	Please answer the phone.
ご家族によろしく伝えてください。	Please say hello to your family for me.
何かメッセージはありますか。	Do you have any messages?
楽しんでいますか。	Are you enjoying yourself?
ピーターによろしく。	Say hi to Peter for me.
色々なものを食べました。	I ate many different things.
初めて、飛行機に乗りました。	I got on an airplane for the first time.
ぜひ、また会いましょう。	Let's meet again.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #29 - Master Speaking on the Phone and Put All of Your Japanese Friends a Touch Away

ただ今、電話に出ることができません。

Tadaima, denwa ni deru koto ga dekimasen.

"I can't answer the phone right now."

In this lesson, you will:

Learn how to talk about what you can do with **koto ga dekiru (ことができる)**

Learn some set phrases used when saying goodbyes

Koto Ga Dekiru (ことができる)

We form this construction by attaching **koto (こと)** to the dictionary form of the chosen verb marking it with the particle **ga**, and completing the sentence with the verb **dekimasu (できます)**.

[(Topic) + dictionary form of verb + koto ga dekimasu]

およぐ oyogu "swim"	ことができます koto ga dekimasu ことができる	"(I) can (verb)."
うたう utau "sing"	koto ga dekiru	
日本語を話す Nihon-go o hanasu "speak Japanese"		
写真をとる shashin o toru "take pictures"		

Example from the Dialogue:

光岡れい: ただ今、電話に出ることができません。

Mitsuoka Rei: Tadaima, denwa ni deru koto ga dekimasen.

Rei Mitsuoka: "I can't answer the phone right now."

Another Example:

(私は) 泳ぐことができます。

(Watashi wa) oyogu koto ga dekimasu.

"(I) can swim."

Let's compare this new potential construction with some constructions that we already know.

"I swim"/"I will swim."

Formal: 私は泳ぎます。 [Watashi wa oyogimasu.]

Informal: 私は泳ぐ。 [Watashi wa oyogu.]

"I can swim"/"I'm able to swim."

Formal: 私は泳ぐことができます。 [Watashi wa oyogu koto ga dekimasu.]

Informal: 私は泳ぐことができる。 [Watashi wa oyogu koto ga dekiru.]

Set Phrases Used When Saying Goodbye

--koto ga dekite yokatta desu (-- ことができてよかったです)

As we just learned, putting the phrase [verb] + koto ga dekiru (ことができる) after a verb in the dictionary form creates the potential form: "to be able to [verb]." By putting dekiru (できる) in the te-form and adding yokatta desu (よかったです) at the end, we can create a sentence that means that we are glad to have been able to [verb].

行くことができてよかったです。 Iku koto ga dekite yokatta desu.	I'm glad to have been able to go.
話すことができてよかったです。 Hanasu koto ga dekite yokatta desu.	I'm glad to have been able to talk (with you).

アシュリー: 皆さんに会うことができ、よかったです。

Ashur : Mina-san ni au koto ga dekite, yokatta desu.

Ashley: "I'm so glad to have met everyone."

Iroiro arigat gozaimashita (いろいろありがとうございました)

Iroiro (いろいろ) is a word that means "various" or "all kinds of." When coupled with arigat gozaimasu (ありがとうございます), the meaning becomes "Thank you for everything you have done," and implies that the listener did many things for the speaker.



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

Okage-sama de (おかげさまで)

This phrase literally means "thanks to you." We can use it even when the listener hasn't specifically done anything for the speaker, and in these cases it is very close in nuance to the English phrase "thanks for asking."

アシュリー: おかげ様で、出張を楽しむことができました。

Ashur: Okage-sama de, shucch o tanoshimu koto ga dekimashita.

Ashley: "Thanks to you I was able to enjoy my business trip."

-- ni yoroshiku tsutaete kudasai (--によろしく伝えてください)

We use this phrase when you want to tell someone to give your regards to someone else. The person's name comes before the particle ni (に). To make the phrase informal, you can leave off the tsutaete kudasai (伝えてください) completely.

アシュリー: お父さんとお母さんによろしく伝えてください。

Ashur: O-t -san to O-k -san ni yoroshiku tsutaete kudasai.

Ashley: "Please say hello to your father and mother for me."

O-genki de (お元気で)

This phrase means "take care" and is used towards someone that you will not see again for a long time or possibly ever. It cannot be used for everyday goodbyes.

アシュリー: お元気で。さようなら。

Ashur: O-genki de. Say nara.

Ashley: "Take care. Goodbye."

Cultural Insight

Phone Numbers in Japan

In Japan, cell phone numbers are eleven digits, and usually begin with either 080 or 090. PHS phone numbers usually start with 070. When reciting a phone number aloud in Japanese, the dashes can either be left out or pronounced as no (の).

Let's look at the example number from the dialogue:



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

090-9876-5432

zero ky zero (no) ky hachi nana roku (no) go yon san ni





Gengo Japanese S1

Where Does Your Japanese Go from Here?

30

Formal Kanji	2
Formal Kana	2
Formal Romanization	3
English	4
Vocabulary	4
Grammar Points	5
Cultural Insight	12

Formal Kanji

- アシュリー チェックアウトお願いします。
ホテル受付 かしこまりました。少々お待ちください。
(cell phone rings)
アシュリー 本田さん?...はい。そうです。
 今から、ホテルを出ます。
 色々お世話になりました。
 はい、え?もしもし?ああ、鈴木さん?
 ははは。はい、また日本に来たいです。
 ははは。鈴木さんは面白い人ですねえ。
 あ...はい。もしもし?光岡さん。本当にお世話になりました。
 ご両親によろしく。
 はい...頑張ります。光岡さんも仕事を頑張ってください。
 あ、本田さん?ええ。皆さんと話すことができ嬉しかったです
 。
 ありがとうございます。じゃあ。また。スカイプしますね。
 ...はい。本田さんもお元気で。
- アシュリー ...
ホテルの受付 お客様、大丈夫ですか。
 ティッシュ使いますか。
- アシュリー あ、ありがとうございます。
 帰りたくないです。日本に住みたいですよ。
- ホテルの受付 日本で働くことはできませんか。
アシュリー あ...そうか。まあ...できますね。
 ちょっと、考えます。ありがとうございました。

Formal Kana

- アシュリー チェックアウトおねがいします。
ホテルうけつけ かしこまりました。しょうしょうおまちください。
(cell phone rings)
アシュリー ほんださん?...はい。そうです。
 いまから、ホテルをでます。
 いろいろおせわになりました。
 はい、え?もしもし?ああ、すずきさん?
 ははは。はい、またにほんにきたいです。
 ははは。すずきさんはおもしろいひとですねえ。



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

あ...はい。もしもし？みつおかさん。ほんとうにお世話になりました。

ごりょうしんによろしく。

はい...がんばります。みつおかさんもしごとをがんばってください。

あ、ほんださん？ええ。みなさんとはなすことができてうれしかったです。

ありがとうございました。じゃあ。また。スカイプしますね。

...はい。ほんださんもおげんきで。

アシュリー

ホテルのうけつけ

...

おきゃくさま、だいじょうぶですか。

ティッシュつかいますか。

アシュリー

ホテルのうけつけ

あ、ありがとうございます。

かえりたくないです。にほんにすみたいですよ。

にほんではたらくことはできませんか。

アシュリー

あ...そうか。まあ...できますね。

ちょっと、かんがえます。ありがとうございました。

Formal Romanization

Ashur

Hoteru uketsuke
(cell phone rings)

Ashur

Chekku auto onegai shimasu.

Kashikomarimashita. Sh sh o-machi kudasai.

Honda-san?... Hai. S desu.

Ima kara, hoteru o demasu.

Iroiro o-sewa ni narimashita.

Hai, e? Moshimoshi? , Suzuki-san?

Hahaha. Hai, mata Nihon ni kitai desu.

Hahaha. Suzuki-san wa omoshiroi hito desu n .

A... hai. Moshimoshi? Mitsuoka-san. Hont ni o-sewa ni narimashita.

Go-ry shin ni yoroshiku.

Hai... ganbarimasu. Mitsuoka-san mo shigoto o ganbatte kudasai.

A, Honda-san? . Mina-san to hanasu koto ga dekite ureshikatta desu.

Arigat gozaimashita. J . mata. Sukaipu shimasu ne.

... Hai. Honda-san mo o-genki de.

Ashur ...
Hoteru no O-kyaku-sama, dajj bu desu ka.
uketsuke
Tisshu tsukaimasu ka.
Ashur A, arigat gozaimasu.
Kaeritakunai desu. Nihon ni sumitai desu yo.
Hoteru no Nihon de hataraku koto wa dekimasen ka.
uketsuke
Ashur A... s ka. M ... dekimasu ne.
Chotto, kangaemasu. Arigat gozaimashita.

English

Ashley (sigh) I'd like to check out.
Receptionist Certainly. Please wait one moment.
(cell phone rings)
Ashley Honda-san? ...Yes, that's right.
I'm leaving the hotel right now.
Thank you so much for everything.
Yes...huh? Hello? Ohh, Suzuki-san?
Hahaha. Yes, I'd like to come to Japan again.
Hahaha. You're so funny, Suzuki-san.
Oh...okay. Hello? Mitsuoka-san? Thank you for everything you've done for me.
Say hello to your parents for me.
Yes...I'll do my best. Good luck with your work, too!
Oh, Honda-san? Yes. I'm so happy that I can talk to everyone.
Thank you so much. Well, see you later. I'll Skype you, okay?
...Okay. You take care, too.

Ashley (starts sobbing)
Receptionist Ma'am, are you all right?
Do you need a tissue?

Ashley Oh, thank you. (Blows her nose)
I don't want to go home. I want to live in Japan.

Receptionist Couldn't you work in Japan?
Ashley Oh...yeah. I suppose I could.
I'll think about it. Thank you very much.



Vocabulary

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
使う	つかう	tsukau	to use; V1
住む	すむ	sumu	to live; V1
チェックアウト	チェックアウト	chekku auto	check out
お世話になりました。	お世話になりました。	O-sewa ni narimashita.	Thank you for your kindness/hospitality.
スカイプ	スカイプ	sukaipu	Skype
がんばる	がんばる	ganbaru	to do one's best; V1
ティッシュ	ティッシュ	tisshu	tissue
考える	かんがえる	kangaeru	to think about; V2
かしこまりました。	かしこまりました。	Kashikomarimashita	all right, certainly (From clerk to customer)
まあ	まあ	m	well, oh, wow

Vocabulary Sample Sentences

5

フラッシュを使わないでください。
東京に住んでいます。
9時にホテルをチェックアウトしました。
お世話になりました。
スカイプで話しましょう。
さあ、がんばりましょう。
すみません、ティッシュありますか。
ゆっくり考えてください。
かしこまりました。
まあ、おいしかったです。

Do not use flash please.
I live in Tokyo.
I checked out of the hotel at nine.
Thank you for your kindness.
Let's talk on Skype.
Now, let's do our best.
Excuse me, do you have a tissue?
Take your time and think about it.
Certainly.
Well... it was tasty.

Grammar Points

Gengo Japanese Lesson #30 - Where Does Your Japanese Go from Here?

光岡さんも仕事を頑張ってください。

Mitsuoka-san mo shigoto o ganbatte kudasai.

"Good luck with your work, too!"

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

In this lesson, you will:

Review various verb constructions that we have learned

Learn how to talk about where you live

Learn how to use the verb *ganbaru*

Review

Let's review the different verb constructions we learned throughout Gengo Japanese.

Formal Verb Chart

	-masu Form	Past Tense	Negative	Negative Past Tense
Class 1	飲みます nomimasu	飲みました nomimashita	飲みません nomimasen	飲みませんでした た nomimasen deshita
Class 2	食べます tabemasu	食べました tabemashita	食べません tabemasen	食べませんでした た tabemasen deshita
Class 3	します shimasu	しました shimashita	しません shimasen	しませんでした た shimasen deshita

Informal Verb Chart

	Dictionary Form	Past Tense	Negative	Negative Past Tense
Class 1	飲む nomu	飲んだ nonda	飲まない nomanai	飲まなかった nomanakatta
Class 2	食べる taberu	食べた tabeta	食べない tabenai	食べなかった tabenakatta
Class 3	する suru	した shita	しない shinai	しなかった shinakatta

Polite Volitional (Lesson 17)

1. Start with masu form

JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

- Take away -masu
- Attach -mash

飲みます nomimasu	飲みましょう nomimash
------------------	--------------------

Example:

お茶を飲みましょう。
O-cha o nomimash .
"Let's drink tea?"

Inviting someone to do something (Lesson 19)

Formal

1. Take away -masu
2. Attach -masen ka

飲みます nomimasu	飲みませんか？ nomimasen ka?
------------------	--------------------------

Informal

1. Drop the final -u
2. Add -anai

飲む nomu	飲まない？ nomanai?
------------	-------------------

Examples:

Formal:

お茶を飲みませんか？
O-cha o nomimasen ka?



"Would you like to drink some tea?"

Informal:

お茶(を)飲まない?

O-cha o nomanai?

"Wanna drink some tea?"

Expressing desire (Lesson 21)

1. Start with masu form
2. Take away -masu
3. Add -tai (desu)

飲みます	飲みたい(です)
nomimasu	nomitai (desu)

Examples:

Formal:

お茶を飲みたいです。

O-cha o nomitai desu.

"I want to drink tea."

Informal:

お茶を飲みたい。

O-cha o nomitai.

"I want to drink tea."

Negative:

To say that we don't want to do something, we conjugate the -tai the same way we conjugate i-adjectives: simply replace the final "i" with -kunai. Add desu in a formal situation. The first example we saw of this was in this lesson's dialogue.

飲みたい	飲みたくない
nomitai	nomitakunai



Examples:

Formal:

帰りたくないです。
Kaeritakunai desu.
"I don't want to go home."

Informal:

帰りたくない。
Kaeritakunai.
"I don't want to go home."

Giving commands (Lesson 23)

1. Start with dictionary form
2. Put verb in te-form
3. Add kudasai for a polite request

飲む nomu	飲んで (ください) nonde (kudasai)
------------	-------------------------------

Examples:

Formal:

お茶を飲んでください。
O-cha o nonde kudasai.
"Please drink some tea."

Informal:

お茶を飲んで。
O-cha o nonde.

"Drink some tea."

On-going actions or states (Lesson 24)

1. Start with dictionary form
2. Put verb in te-form
3. Add iru/imasu

Formal

飲みます nomu	飲んでます nonde imasu
--------------	----------------------

Informal

飲む nomu	飲んでいる nonde iru
------------	--------------------

Examples:

Formal:

お茶を飲んでます。
O-cha o nonde imasu.
"I'm drinking tea."

Informal:

お茶を飲んでいる。
O-cha o nonde iru.
"I'm drinking tea."

Telling someone not to do something (Lesson 25)

1. Start with dictionary form
2. Change it to the negative form



JapanesePod101.com

Learn Japanese with **FREE** Podcasts

- Add de
- Add kudasai for a polite request

飲む	飲まないで(ください)
nomu	nomanai de kudasai

Examples:

Formal:

お茶を飲まないでください。
O-cha o nomanai de kudasai.
"Please don't drink tea."

Informal:

お茶を飲まないで。
O-cha o nomanai de.
"Don't drink tea."

Talking About Where You Live

The verb sumu (住む) means "to live." We put it in the te-form and add iru / imasu (いる / います) to talk about where we currently live. The place the subject lives is marked by the particle ni (に).

Formal: [place] ni sunde imasu = "I live in [place]"

Informal: [place] ni sunde iru = "I live in [place]"

イギリスに住んでいます。	Igirisu ni sunde imasu.	"I live in England."
東京に住んでいます。	T ky ni sunde imasu.	"I live in Tokyo."
どこに住んでいますか。	Doko ni sunde imasu ka.	"Where do you live?"

In the example from the dialogue, sumu (住む) is put into the -tai (たい) form that we covered

in Lesson 21:

アシュリー: 日本に住みたいですよ。

Ashur : Nihon ni sumitai desu yo.

Ashley: "I want to live in Japan."

Using ganbaru (がんばる)

Ganbaru (がんばる) is a very common verb that means to "do one's best" or to "work very hard" When put into the te-form and used as an exclamation (ganbatte! がんばって!), it is similar to "good luck!" or "do your best!" in English. You can indicate what someone is going to work hard on by using the direct object particle o (を), as seen in the dialogue.

Examples from the Dialogue:

1. アシュリー: はい、...頑張ります。

Ashur : Hai... ganbarimasu.

Ashley: "Yes...I'll do my best."

2. アシュリー: 光岡さんも仕事を頑張ってください。

Ashur : Mitsuoka-san mo shigoto o ganbatte kudasai.

Ashley: "Good luck with your work, too!"

Cultural Insight

Expressing Gratitude

Using the grammar and phrases you studied in this series, you'll be able to write a thank you letter or e-mail to people who have taken care of you in some way, such as a host family.

For example:

O-sewa ni narimashita (お世話になりました) - Lesson 25

→wa tanoshikatta desu (~は楽しかったです) - Lesson 19

Mata aimash /asobimash . (また会いましょう / 遊びましょう) - Lesson 17

O-genki de. (お元気で) - Lesson 29

Do you remember these phrases? They're very useful for writing a thank-you letter!

Expressing gratitude is very important in Japanese society. Not sending a thank-you letter or e-mail might send the message that something wasn't to your liking or that something was lacking in some way. If someone takes care of you or does something special for you, it would be a good idea to express your gratitude by sending a thank-you letter or e-mail.

JapanesePod101.com



3 MINUTE
JAPANESE

innovative LANGUAGE.COM

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #1 Self Introduction

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

1

KANJI

1. 初めまして。リサです。
2. 初めまして。田中リサと申します。
3. よろしくお願ひします。
4. よろしくお願ひいたします。

KANA

1. はじめまして。リサです。
2. はじめまして。たなかりさともうします。
3. よろしくおねがいします
4. よろしくおねがいいたします

ROMANIZATION

1. Hajimemashite, Risa desu.
2. Hajimemashite. Tanaka Risa to mōshimasu.
3. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu
4. Yoroshiku onegai itashimasu

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Nice to meet you. I'm Risa.
2. Nice to meet you. I'm Risa Tanaka. (formal)
3. Please be kind to me.
4. Please be kind to me. (formal)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
初めまして	はじめまして	hajimemashite	Nice to meet you.	expression
リサ	リサ	Risa	Risa, person first name	proper noun
です	です	desu	am	
申します	もうします	mōshimasu	am called (humble form)	verb
田中リサ	たなかリサ	Tanaka Risa	Risa Tanaka, person's full name	proper noun
と	と	to	quotation particle	particle
よろしく	よろしく	yoroshiku	regard	adverb
お願いします	おねがいします	onegai shimasu	please	phrase
お願いいたします	おねがいたします	onegai itashimasu	please (humble form)	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>初めまして、鈴木でございます。 <i>Hajimemashite, Suzuki de gozaimasu.</i></p> <p>Nice to meet you, I'm Suzuki.</p>	<p>オッケーです。 <i>Okkei desu.</i></p> <p>It's okay.</p>
<p>水木一男と申します。 <i>Mizuki Kazuo to mōshimasu.</i></p> <p>My name is Kazuo Mizuki.</p>	<p>食べ始める時、「いただきます」と言います。 <i>Tabehajimeru toki, "Itadakimasu" to iimasu.</i></p> <p>When we start eating, we say "itadakimasu."</p>
<p>どうぞ、よろしくお願いたします。 <i>Dōzo, yoroshiku o-negai itashimasu.</i></p> <p>Very pleased to meet you.</p>	<p>よろしくお願ひします。 <i>Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Pleased to meet you.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to introduce yourself.

	Japanese	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	初めまして。リサ です。 (<i>Hajimemashite, Risa desu.</i>)	Nice to meet you. I'm Risa.	Formal expression.
Word 1	初めまして (<i>hajimemashite</i>)	Nice to meet you.	
Word 2	リサ (<i>Risa</i>)	Risa, person's first name	
Word 3	です (<i>desu</i>)	am	

Phrase 2	初めまして。田中 リサと申します。 (<i>Hajimemashite.</i> <i>Tanaka Risa to</i> <i>mōshimasu.</i>)	Nice to meet you. I'm Risa Tanaka. (formal)	Very polite expression.
Word 1	初めまして (<i>hajimemashite</i>)	Nice to meet you.	
Word 2	田中リサ (<i>Tanaka Risa</i>)	Risa Tanaka, person's full name	
Word 3	と (<i>to</i>)	quotation particle	
Word 4	申します (<i>mōshimasu</i>)	am called (humble form)	Humble phrase.
Phrase 3	よろしくお願 い します。 (<i>Yoroshiku onegai</i> <i>shimasu</i>)	Please be kind to me.	Formal expression.
Word 1	よろしく (<i>yoroshiku</i>)	regard	
Word 2	お願い します (<i>onegai shimasu</i>)	please	
Phrase 4	よろしくお願 い いたします。 (<i>Yoroshiku onegai</i> <i>itashimasu</i>)	Please be kind to me. (formal)	Very polite expression.
Word 1	よろしく (<i>yoroshiku</i>)	regard	
Word 2	お願い いたします (<i>onegai itashimasu</i>)	please (humble form)	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

When introducing oneself in Japanese, the last or family name comes before the first name. Also, the first name is not always included, and depends on the situation. Finally, keep in mind that Japanese people usually don't shake hands.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #2 Greetings

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

2

KANJI

1. おはようございます。
2. こんにちは。
3. またね！
4. さようなら。

KANA

1. おはようございます。
2. こんにちは。
3. またね！
4. さようなら。

ROMANIZATION

1. Ohayō gozaimasu.
2. Kon'nichi wa.
3. Mata ne!
4. Sayōnara.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Good morning.
2. Good day.
3. See you!
4. Goodbye.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
おはよう	おはよう	Ohayō	Good morning	expression
ございます	ございます	gozaimasu	phrase used to add the politeness to the expression	copula (formal)
こんにちは	こんにちは	Kon'nichiwa	hello, good day (daytime greeting)	expression
ね	ね	ne	right?	sentence ending part
さようなら	さようなら	sayōnara	goodbye	expression
また	また	mata	again	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>皆さん、こんにちは。 <i>Mina-san, kon'nichiwa.</i></p> <p>Hello, everybody.</p>	<p>じゃ、また。 <i>Ja, mata.</i></p> <p>See you later.</p>
--	--

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to greet someone when you arrive and when you part.

	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Important Notes</i>
Phrase 1	おはようございます。 (<i>Ohayō gozaimasu.</i>)	Good morning.	Formal.
Word 1	おはよう (<i>Ohayō</i>)	it originates from the word meaning "early"	You can use this to say "good morning" in an informal way
Word 2	ございます (<i>gozaimasu</i>)	polite phrase used to add the politeness to the expression	
Phrase 2	こんにちは。 (<i>Kon'nichi wa.</i>)	Good day.	
Word 1	こんにちは (<i>Kon'nichiwa</i>)	hello, good day (daytime greeting)	
Phrase 3	またね! (<i>Mata ne!</i>)	See you!	Informal.
Word 1	また (<i>mata</i>)	again	
Word 2	ね (<i>ne</i>)	right?	
Phrase 4	さようなら。 (<i>Sayōnara.</i>)	Goodbye.	
Word 1	さようなら (<i>sayōnara</i>)	goodbye	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In this lesson, we covered a few greetings. There are many more. For example, when you leave your workplace, you would never say sayonara. Instead, we usually say お疲れ様でした (Otsukaresamadeshita), which means something like "thank you for working together."

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #3 Manners

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

3

KANJI

1. ありがとう。
2. どうもありがとうございます。
3. 本当にありがとうございます。
4. いろいろありがとうございます。

KANA

1. ありがとう。
2. どうもありがとうございます。
3. ほんとうにありがとうございます。
4. いろいろありがとうございます。

ROMANIZATION

1. Arigatō
2. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.
3. Hontō ni arigatō gozaimasu.
4. Iroiro arigatō gozaimasu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Thank you.
2. Thank you very much.
3. Thank you very much.
4. Thanks for everything.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
いろいろ	いろいろ	iroiro	various	adverb
ありがとう	ありがとう	arigatō	thank you	expression
どうも	どうも	dōmo	very much	adverb
ございます	ございます	gozaimasu	phrase used to add the politeness to the expression	copula (formal)
本当に	ほんとうに	hontōni	really	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>彼が本当にそう言ったのですか。 <i>Kare ga hontō ni sō itta no desu ka.</i></p> <p>He really said that?</p>	<p>東京は本当に便利です。 <i>Tokyō wa hontō ni benri desu.</i></p> <p>Tokyo is really convenient.</p>
---	---

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to thank other people in various ways.

Register	Japanese	English
----------	----------	---------

Phrase 1	informal	ありがとう。 (<i>Arigatō</i>)	Thank you.
Word 1		ありがとう (<i>arigatō</i>)	thank you
Phrase 2	formal	どうもありがと うございます。 (<i>Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.</i>)	Thank you very much.
Word 1		どうも (<i>dōmo</i>)	very much
Word 2		ありがとう (<i>arigatō</i>)	thank you
Word 3		ございます (<i>gozaimasu</i>)	polite phrase used to add the politeness to the expression
Phrase 3	formal	本当にありがと うございます。 (<i>Hontō ni arigatō gozaimasu.</i>)	Thank you very much.
Word 1		本当に (<i>hontō ni</i>)	really
Word 2		ありがとう (<i>arigatō</i>)	thank you
Word 3		ございます (<i>gozaimasu</i>)	polite phrase used to add the politeness to the expression

Phrase 4	formal	いろいろありがとう ございます。 (<i>Iroiro arigatō gozaimasu.</i>)	Thanks for everything.
Word 1		いろいろ (<i>iroiro</i>)	various
Word 2		ありがとう (<i>arigatō</i>)	thank you
Word 3		ございます (<i>gozaimasu</i>)	polite phrase used to add the politeness to the expression

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Japanese, we often say どうも (*dōmo*), instead of "thank you." However, it's the most casual way of saying "thank you" and sometimes it even sounds very rude. So you have to be careful when you use it.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #4

Asking How Someone Is

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

4

KANJI

1. 元気ですか。
2. 元気?
3. はい、元気です
4. いいえ、あまり。

KANA

1. げんきですか。
2. げんき?
3. はい、げんきです。
4. いいえ、あまり。

ROMANIZATION

1. Genki desu ka.
2. Genki?
3. Hai, genki desu.
4. lie, amari.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. "How are you? (lit. Are you fine?)"
2. "How are you? (lit. Are you fine?)"
3. Yes, I'm fine.
4. Not so well.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
元気	げんき	genki	fine	na-adjective
です	です	desu	are	copula (polite form)
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
はい	はい	hai	yes	expression
です	です	desu	am	
いいえ	いいえ	iie	no	expression
あまり	あまり	amari	not very	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 A. <i>O-genki desu ka.</i> B. <i>Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
--	--

いいえ、ちがいます。 <i>ie, chigaimasu.</i>	私はお酒があまり好きじゃない。 <i>Watashi wa osake ga amari suki janai.</i>
No, that's wrong.	I don't really like alcohol.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer the question How are you?.

	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Important Notes</i>
Phrase 1	元気ですか。 (Genki desu ka.)	How are you? (lit. Are you fine?)	Formal expression.
Word 1	元気 (genki)	fine	
Word 2	です (desu)	are	
Word 3	か (ka)	question marking particle	
Phrase 2	元気? (Genki?)	How are you? (lit. Are you fine?)	Informal expression.
Word 1	元気 (genki)	fine	
Phrase 3	はい、元気です (Hai, genki desu.)	Yes, I'm fine.	
Word 1	はい (hai)	yes	
Word 2	元気 (genki)	fine	

Word 3	です (<i>desu</i>)	am
Phrase 4	いいえ、あまり。 (<i>ie, amari</i>)	Not so well.
Word 1	いいえ (<i>ie</i>)	no
Word 2	あまり (<i>amari</i>)	not very

CULTURAL INSIGHT

To reply to the greeting "How are you?" in Japanese, people sometimes say お蔭様で (*O-kage-sama de*), especially in a formal situation. It's almost the same as "I'm fine. Thank you." in English. *O-kage-sama de* means something like "thanks to you."

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #5

Making Apologies

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

5

KANJI

1. すみません
2. どうもすみません。
3. ごめんなさい。
4. ごめん。

KANA

1. すみません。
2. どうもすみません。
3. ごめんなさい。
4. ごめん。

ROMANIZATION

1. Sumimasen.
2. Dōmo sumimasen,
3. Gomen'nasai.
4. Gomen.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Excuse me. / I'm sorry.
2. Excuse me. / I'm sorry. (more polite)
3. I'm sorry.
4. Sorry.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
なさい	なさい	nasai	phrase to add politeness to the expression	auxiliary verb
すみません	すみません	sumimasen	excuse me, sorry	expression
どうも	どうも	dōmo	very much	adverb
ごめん	ごめん	gomen	Sorry	expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

本当にごめん。
Hontō ni gomen.

I'm really sorry.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to apologise yourself and say that you are sorry.

Japanese	English	Important Notes
----------	---------	-----------------

Phrase 1	すみません (<i>Sumimasen.</i>)	Excuse me. / I'm sorry.	Formal expression.
Word 1	すみません (<i>sumimasen</i>)	excuse me, sorry	
Phrase 2	どうもすみませ ん。 (<i>Dōmo sumimasen,</i>)	Excuse me. / I'm sorry.	Very polite expression
Word 1	どうも (<i>dōmo</i>)	very much	
Word 2	すみません (<i>sumimasen</i>)	excuse me, sorry	
Phrase 3	ごめんなさい。 (<i>Gomen'nasai.</i>)	I'm sorry.	This is less polite than 'sumimasen.'
Word 1	ごめん (<i>gomen</i>)	Sorry	
Word 2	なさい (<i>nasai</i>)	phrase to add politeness to the expression	
Phrase 4	ごめん。 (<i>Gomen.</i>)	Sorry.	Casual expression.
Word 1	ごめん (<i>gomen</i>)	Sorry	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

When saying すみません (*sumimasen*) or ごめんなさい (*gomen'nasai*), Japanese people

often bow. When you lightly say "Excuse me," you just bow by lowering your head slightly. On the other hand, when you deeply apologize to someone, you should bend your head very low.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #6

Refusing Politely

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

6

KANJI

1. すみません、ちょっと...。
2. ごめんなさい、ちょっと...。
3. すみません、予定があります。
4. ごめんなさい、予定があります。

KANA

1. すみません、ちょっと...。
2. ごめんなさい、ちょっと...。
3. すみません、よていがあります。
4. ごめんなさい、よていがあります。

ROMANIZATION

1. Sumimasen, chotto...
2. Gomen'nasai, chotto...
3. Sumimasen, yotei ga arimasu.
4. Gomen'nasai, yotei ga arimasu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Sorry, but...
2. I'm sorry, but... (less formal)
3. I'm sorry, but I have plans.
4. Sorry, but I have plans.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
すみません	すみません	sumimasen	excuse me, sorry	expression
ちょっと	ちょっと	chotto	a bit	adverb
ごめんなさい	ごめんなさい	gomen'nasai	excuse me, sorry	expression
予定	よてい	yotei	plan	noun
が	が	ga	subject marking particle	particle
あります	あります	arimasu	as I have, as there is	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>予定があります。 <i>Yotei ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>I have a plan.</p>	<p>今夜、予定がありますか。 <i>Konya, yotei ga arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have any plans tonight?</p>
--	--

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to refuse politely an invite.

	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Important Notes</i>
Phrase 1	すみません、ちよつと…。 (<i>Sumimasen, chotto...</i>)	Sorry, but...	
Word 1	すみません (<i>sumimasen</i>)	excuse me, sorry	
Word 2	ちよつと (<i>chotto</i>)	a bit	
Phrase 2	ごめんなさい、ちよつと…。 (<i>Gomen'nasai, chotto...</i>)	I'm sorry, but...	
Word 1	ごめんなさい (<i>gomen'nasai</i>)	excuse me, sorry	This is less polite than 'sumimasen.'
Word 2	ちよつと (<i>chotto</i>)	a bit	
Phrase 3	すみません、予定があります。 (<i>Sumimasen, yotei ga arimasu.</i>)	I'm sorry, but I have plans.	
Word 1	すみません (<i>sumimasen</i>)	excuse me, sorry	
Word 2	予定 (<i>yotei</i>)	plan	
Word 3	が (<i>ga</i>)	subject marking particle	

Word 4	あります (arimasu)	as I have, as there is	
Phrase 4	ごめんなさい、予定があります。 (Gomen'nasai, yotei ga arimasu.)	Sorry, but I have plans.	
Word 1	ごめんなさい (gomen'nasai)	excuse me, sorry	This is less polite than 'sumimasen.'
Word 2	予定 (yotei)	plan	
Word 3	が (ga)	subject marking particle	
Word 4	あります (arimasu)	as I have, as there is	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The word ちよつと (*chotto*) means "a little" or "a bit," but it's also often used when refusing in a roundabout way, like "I have small things and I'm sorry I have to refuse your invitation." Of course, you can use it even if you don't have any plans.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #7 Do You Speak English?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

7

KANJI

1. 英語、話せますか。
2. 英語、わかりますか。
3. はい、わかります。
4. いいえ、わかりません。

KANA

1. えいご、はなせますか。
2. えいご、わかりますか。
3. はい、わかります。
4. いいえ、わかりません。

ROMANIZATION

1. Eigo hanasemasu ka.
2. Eigo, wakarimasu ka.
3. Hai, wakarimasu.
4. lie, wakarimasen.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Do you speak English?
2. Do you speak English? (alternative version)
3. Yes, I speak English.
4. No, I don't speak English.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
分かりません	わかりません	wakarimasen	do not understand	verb (negative form)
英語	えいご	Eigo	English	noun
話せます	はなせます	hanasemasu	can speak	verb
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
わかります	わかります	wakarimasu	understand	verb
はい	はい	hai	yes	expression
いいえ	いいえ	iie	no	expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」</p> <p>B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」</p> <p>A. <i>O-genki desu ka.</i></p> <p>B. <i>Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you?</p> <p>B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。</p> <p><i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
--	--

いいえ、ちがいます。

lie, chigaimasu.

No, that's wrong.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer the question Do you speak English?.

	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>English</i>
Phrase 1	英語、話せますか。 (<i>Eigo hanasemasu ka.</i>)	Do you speak English?
Word 1	英語 (<i>Eigo</i>)	English
Word 2	話せます (<i>hanasemasu</i>)	can speak
Word 3	か (<i>ka</i>)	question marking particle
Phrase 2	英語、わかりますか。 (<i>Eigo, wakarimasu ka.</i>)	Do you speak English? (alternative version)
Word 1	英語 (<i>Eigo</i>)	English
Word 2	わかります (<i>wakarimasu</i>)	understand
Word 3	か (<i>ka</i>)	question marking particle
Phrase 3	はい、わかります。 (<i>Hai, wakarimasu.</i>)	Yes, I speak English.

Word 1	はい (hai)	yes
Word 2	わかります (wakarimasu)	understand
Phrase 4	いいえ、わかりません。 (ie, wakarimasen.)	No, I don't speak English.
Word 1	いいえ (ie)	no
Word 2	わかりません (wakarimasen)	do not understand

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Japan, when you want to ask something in English, it'd be better to ask this question first - "Do you speak English?" Because many Japanese people are so kind, they may feel really confused and sorry if they cannot reply to you well in English.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #8 Talking About Your Age

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

8

KANJI

1. 何歳ですか。
2. 何歳?
3. 17歳です。
4. 秘密です。

KANA

1. なんさいですか。
2. なんさい?
3. じゅうななさいです。
4. ひみつです。

ROMANIZATION

1. Nan-sai desu ka.
2. Nan-sai?
3. Jū nana-sai desu.
4. Himitsu desu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. How old are you?
2. How old are you? (informal)
3. I am 17.
4. It's a secret.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
何歳	なんさい	nan-sai	how old	phrase
です	です	desu	are	copula (polite form)
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
17 (じゅうなな)	じゅうなな	jū nana	seventeen	number
歳	さい	sai	years old	suffix
です	です	desu	am	
秘密	ひみつ	himitsu	secret	
です	です	desu	roughly means 'to be'	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 A. <i>O-genki desu ka.</i> B. <i>Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
<p>彼女は秘密を守れない人だ。 <i>Kanojo wa himitsu o mamorenai hito da.</i></p> <p>She can't keep secrets.</p>	<p>わたしはジョン・スミスです。 <i>Watashi wa Jon Sumisu desu.</i></p> <p>I am John Smith.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask someone's age and to say yours.

	Register	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	formal	何歳ですか。 (<i>Nan-sai desu ka.</i>)	How old are you?
Word 1		何歳 (<i>nan-sai</i>)	how old
Word 2		です (<i>desu</i>)	are
Word 3		か (<i>ka</i>)	question marking particle
Phrase 2	informal	何歳? (<i>Nan-sai?</i>)	How old are you? (informal)
Word 1		何歳 (<i>nan-sai</i>)	how old

Phrase 3	17歳です。 (Jū nana-sai desu.)	I am 17.
Word 1	17 (じゅうなな) (jū nana)	seventeen
Word 2	歳 (sai)	years old
Word 3	です (desu)	am
Phrase 4	秘密です。 (Himitsu desu.)	It's a secret.
Word 1	秘密 (himitsu)	secret
Word 2	です (desu)	roughly means 'to be'

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Japan, sometimes it's important to know the age of your friends or co-workers. Usually, you should talk in a formal way when speaking to your seniors and superiors. However, be sure not to ask about age at first, especially to women!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #9

Using Adjectives

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

9

KANJI

1. 嬉しいです。
2. 寂しくないです。
3. 元気です。
4. ピーターさんはかっこいいです。

KANA

1. うれしいです。
2. さびしくないです。
3. げんきです。
4. ピーターさんはかっこいいです。

ROMANIZATION

1. Ureshii desu.
2. Sabishiku nai desu.
3. Genki desu.
4. Pītā-san wa kakkoi desu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I'm happy.
2. I'm not lonely.
3. I'm fine.
4. Peter, you're handsome.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
嬉しい	うれしい	ureshii	happy	i-adjective
寂しくない	さびしくない	sabishiku nai	not lonely	i-adjective (negative)
元気	げんき	genki	fine, energetic	na-adjective
ピーターさん	ピーターさん	Pitā-san	Peter (with a polite name suffix, -san)	phrase
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
かっこいい	かっこいい	kakko ii	cool, attractive; i-Adj	na-adjective
です	です	desu	am, are, is	copula (polite form)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

今日はクリスマスです。

Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.

Today is Christmas.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to use adjectives in simple sentences.

	Register	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	formal	嬉しいです。 (<i>Ureshii desu.</i>)	I'm happy.
Word 1		嬉しい (<i>ureshii</i>)	happy
Word 2		です (<i>desu</i>)	am
Phrase 2	formal	寂しくないです。 (<i>Sabishiku nai desu.</i>)	I'm not lonely.
Word 1		寂しくない (<i>sabishiku nai</i>)	not lonely
Word 2		です (<i>desu</i>)	am
Phrase 3	formal	元気です。 (<i>Genki desu.</i>)	I'm fine.
Word 1		元気 (<i>genki</i>)	fine, energetic
Word 2		です (<i>desu</i>)	am
Phrase 4	formal	ピーターさんは かっこいいです。 (<i>Pītā-san wa kakkoi desu.</i>)	Peter, you're handsome.
Word 1		ピーターさん (<i>Pītā-san</i>)	Peter (with a polite name suffix, -san)

Word 2	は (<i>wa</i>)	topic marking particle
Word 3	かっこいい (<i>kakko ii</i>)	cool, attractive; i- Adj
Word 4	です (<i>de wa arimasen</i>)	are, is

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Japanese, *あなた* (*anata*) is not used the same way "you" is used in English. It's more common and polite to say the name of the person, followed by *san*. For example, when you're talking to someone named Suzuki, you can say *鈴木さんは可愛いです*。 (*Suzuki-san wa kawaii desu.*) meaning "You, Ms. Suzuki, are pretty."

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #10

Asking How Much Something Costs

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

10

KANJI

1. これはいくらですか。
2. これ、いくら？
3. じゃあ、これをください。
4. すみません、ちょっと高いです。

KANA

1. こちらはおいくらですか。
2. これ、いくら？
3. じゃあ、これをください。
4. けっこうです。たかすぎます。

ROMANIZATION

1. Kore wa ikura desu ka.
2. Kore, ikura ?
3. Jā, kore o kudasai.
4. Sumimasen, chotto takai desu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. How much does this cost?
2. How much does this cost? (informal)
3. Okay, I'll take it.
4. No, thanks. It's too expensive.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
これ	これ	kore	this	noun
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
いくら	いくら	ikura	how much	adverb
です	です	desu	is	copula (polite form)
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
じゃあ	じゃあ	jā	well, then	expression
を	を	o	object marking particle	particle
ください	ください	kudasai	please give me	phrase
すみません	すみません	sumimasen	excuse me, sorry	expression
ちょっと	ちょっと	chotto	a bit	adverb
高い	たかい	takai	expensive	i-adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>これは何ですか。 <i>Kore wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What is this?</p>	<p>あれ？これは私のですか。 <i>Are? Kore wa watashi no desu ka.</i></p> <p>Huh? Is this mine?</p>
<p>今日はクリスマスです。 <i>Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.</i></p> <p>Today is Christmas.</p>	<p>おつりはいくらですか。 <i>Otsuri wa ikura desu ka.</i></p> <p>How much is the change?</p>
<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. O-genki desu ka.</i> <i>B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
<p>それは高すぎます。 <i>Sore wa takasugimasu.</i></p> <p>That's too expensive.</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask how much something costs.

	Register	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	formal	<p>これはいくらで すか。 <i>(Kore wa ikura desu ka.)</i></p>	How much does this cost?
Word 1		<p>これ <i>(kore)</i></p>	this
Word 2		<p>は <i>(wa)</i></p>	topic marking particle

Word 3		いくら (ikura)	how much
Word 4		です (desu)	is
Word 5		か (ka)	question marking particle
Phrase 2	informal	これ、いくら? (Kore, ikura ?)	How much does this cost? (informal)
Word 1		これ (kore)	this
Word 2		いくら (ikura)	how much
Phrase 3		じゃあ、これをく ださい。 (Jā, kore o kudasai.)	Okay, I'll take it.
Word 1		じゃあ (jā)	well, then
Word 2		これ (kore)	this
Word 3		を (o)	object marking particle
Word 4		ください (kudasai)	please give me

Phrase 4	すみません、ち よっと高いです。 (<i>Sumimasen,</i> <i>chotto takai</i> <i>desu.</i>)	No, thanks. It's too expensive.
Word 1	すみません (<i>sumimasen</i>)	excuse me, sorry
Word 2	ちょっと (<i>chotto</i>)	a bit
Word 3	高い (<i>takai</i>)	expensive
Word 4	です (<i>desu</i>)	is

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Japan, there are many household goods stores called "100-yen shops" where you can buy everything for one coin before tax. You don't even need to ask "How much?", *これはいくらですか。* (*Kore wa ikura desu ka*) there, right?

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #11

How to Understand Prices

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

11

KANJI

1. 一円。
2. 十円。
3. 五千五百十円。
4. 二千六百七十円。

KANA

1. いちえん。
2. じゅうえん。
3. ごせんごひゃくじゅうえん。
4. にせんろっぴゃくななじゅうえん。

ROMANIZATION

1. Ichi-en.
2. Jū-en.
3. Go-sen go-hyaku jū-en.
4. Ni-sen ro-ppyaku nana-jū-en.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. One yen.
2. Ten yen.
3. Five thousand five hundred and ten yen.
4. Two thousand six hundred and seventy yen.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
五千	ごせん	go-sen	five thousands	number
五百	ごひゃく	go-hyaku	five hundreds	number
二千	にせん	ni-sen	two thousands	number
六百	ろっぴゃく	ro-ppyaku	six hundreds	number
七十	ななじゅう	nana-jū	seventy	number
一	いち	ichi	one	number
円	えん	en	yen	suffix
十	じゅう	jū	ten	number

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>お茶を一杯ください。 <i>O-cha wo ippai kudasai.</i></p> <p>One cup of tea, please.</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
<p>車が十台あります。 <i>Kuruma ga jū-dai arimasu.</i></p> <p>There are ten cars.</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to read prices.

	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>English</i>
Phrase 1	一円。 (<i>ichi-en.</i>)	One yen.
Word 1	一 (<i>ichi</i>)	one
Word 2	円 (<i>en</i>)	yen
Phrase 2	十円。 (<i>jū-en.</i>)	Ten yen.
Word 1	十 (<i>jū</i>)	ten
Word 2	円 (<i>en</i>)	yen
Phrase 3	五千五百十円。 (<i>Go-sen go-hyaku jū-en.</i>)	Five thousand five hundred and ten yen.
Word 1	五千 (<i>go-sen</i>)	five thousands
Word 2	五百 (<i>go-hyaku</i>)	five hundreds
Word 3	十 (<i>jū</i>)	ten
Word 4	円 (<i>en</i>)	yen

Phrase 4	二千六百七十円。 (<i>Ni-sen ro-ppyaku nana-jū-en.</i>)	Two thousand six hundred and seventy yen.
Word 1	二千 (<i>ni-sen</i>)	two thousands
Word 2	六百 (<i>ro-ppyaku</i>)	six hundreds
Word 3	七十 (<i>nana-jū</i>)	seventy
Word 4	円 (<i>en</i>)	yen

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Japanese currency has 1, 5, 10, 50, 100, and 500-yen coins and 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, and 10,000-yen bills. The coins are called 一円玉 (*ichi-en dama*), 五百円玉 (*go-hyaku-en dama*) and so on. On the other hand, the bills are called 千円札 (*sen-en satsu*), 一万円札 (*ichi-man-en satsu*) and so on.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #12

Asking What Someone is Doing

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

12

KANJI

1. 何をしていますか。
2. 何してるの？
3. 勉強しています。
4. 何もしていません。

KANA

1. なにをしていますか。
2. なにしてるの？
3. べんきょうしています。
4. とくになにもしていません。

ROMANIZATION

1. Nani o shite imasu ka.
2. Nani shiteru no?
3. Benkyō shite imasu.
4. Toku ni nani mo shite imasen.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. What are you doing? (formal)
2. What are you doing? (informal)
3. I am studying.
4. I'm not doing anything.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
何も	なにも	nanimo	anything	adverb
していません	していません	shite imasen	am, are, is not doing	phrase
何	なん	nan	what	interrogative
を	を	o	object marking particle	particle
しています	しています	shite imasu	am, are, is doing	phrase
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
してる	してる	shiteru	are doing	verb
の	の	no	question marking particle (colloquial)	question marking par
勉強	べんきょう	benkyō	study	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

なにがすきですか。 <i>Nani ga suki desu ka.</i> What do you like?	何を飲みますか。 <i>Nani o nomimasu ka.</i> What would you like to drink?
A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. O-genki desu ka.</i> <i>B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i> A: How are you? B: I'm great!	1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i> How many yen is it to one dollar?

私は一年間日本語を勉強しました。
Watashi wa ichi-nen-kan Nihon-go o benkyō shimashita.
 I studied Japanese for a year.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer the question What are you doing?.

	Register	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	formal	何をしていますか。 <i>(Nani o shite imasu ka.)</i>	What are you doing?
Word 1		何 <i>(nani)</i>	what
Word 2		を <i>(o)</i>	object marking particle
Word 3		しています <i>(shite imasu)</i>	am, are, is doing
Word 4		か <i>(ka)</i>	question marking particle

Phrase 2	informal	何してるの？ (Nani shiteru no?)	What are you doing?
Word 1		何 (nani)	what
Word 2		してる (shiteru)	are doing
Word 3		の (no)	question marking particle (colloquial)
Phrase 3		勉強しています。 (Benkyō shite imasu.)	I am studying.
Word 1		勉強 (benkyō)	study
Word 2		しています (shite imasu)	am, are, is doing
Phrase 4		何もしていません。 (Toku ni nani mo shite imasen.)	I'm not doing anything.
Word 1		何も (nani mo)	anything
Word 2		していません (shite imasen)	am, are, is not doing

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you've ever been to Japan, you might wonder what someone just standing around is doing. There are some unique jobs, for example guides at elevators, parking lots, or banks and

ATMs. They assist people or vehicles so that business can carry on smoothly.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #13

Who Is It?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

13

KANJI

1. これはだれですか。
2. あの人は誰？
3. 私です。
4. 私の友達です。

KANA

1. これはだれですか。
2. あのひとはだれ？
3. わたしです。
4. あれはわたしのともだちです。

ROMANIZATION

1. Kore wa daredesu ka.
2. Ano hito wa dare ?
3. Watashi desu.
4. Are wa watashi no tomodachi desu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Who is this?
2. Who is that?
3. It's me.
4. (That) is a friend of mine.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
これ	これ	kore	this	noun
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
だれ	だれ	dare	who	interrogative
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
あの人	あのひと	ano hito	that person	phrase
誰	だれ	dare	who	interrogative
私	わたし	watashi	I	pronoun
私の	わたしの	watashi no	my	phrase
友達	ともだち	tomodachi	friend	noun
です	です	desu	am, are, is	copula (polite form)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>これは何ですか。 <i>Kore wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What is this?</p>	<p>あれ？これは私のですか。 <i>Are? Kore wa watashi no desu ka.</i></p> <p>Huh? Is this mine?</p>
--	---

<p>今日はクリスマスです。 <i>Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.</i></p> <p>Today is Christmas.</p>	<p>だれからの電話か知りませんが、ここでは けいたい使用きん止です。 <i>Dare kara no denwa ka shirimasen ga, koko de wa keitai shiyō kinshi desu.</i></p> <p>I don't care who is calling, you cannot use the phone here.</p>
<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. O-genki desu ka. B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
<p>あの人はよく公園に行きました。 <i>Ano hito wa yoku kōen ni ikimashita.</i></p> <p>That person used to go to the park.</p>	<p>あの人は誰ですか。 <i>Ano hito wa dare desu ka.</i></p> <p>Who is that person?</p>
<p>私は日本人です。 <i>Watashi wa nihonjin desu.</i></p> <p>I am Japanese.</p>	<p>これは、私のメアドです。 <i>Kore wa watashi no meado desu.</i></p> <p>This is my e-mail address.</p>
<p>彼女の代わりに私が昇進するまでは、私た ちは友達でした。 <i>Kanojo no kawari ni watashi ga shōshin suru made wa, watashitachi wa tomodachi deshita.</i></p> <p>She was a friend of mine until I got the promotion instead of her.</p>	<p>彼は20年間私の友達です。 <i>Kare wa ni-ju-nenkan watashi no tomodachi desu.</i></p> <p>He has been my friend for twenty years.</p>
<p>彼は私の友達だ。 <i>Kare wa watashi no tomodachi da.</i></p> <p>He is my friend.</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask who it is.

Register	Japanese	English
----------	----------	---------

Phrase 1	formal	これはだれですか。 (Kore wa dare desu ka.)	Who is this?
Word 1		これ (kore)	this
Word 2		は (wa)	topic marking particle
Word 3		だれ (dare)	who
Word 4		です (desu)	is
Word 5		か (ka)	question marking particle
Phrase 2	informal	あの人は誰? (Ano hito wa dare ?)	Who is that?
Word 1		あの人 (Ano hito)	that person
Word 2		は (wa)	topic marking particle
Word 3		誰 (dare)	who
Phrase 3		私です。 (Watashi desu.)	It's me.
Word 1		私 (watashi)	I

Word 2	です (<i>desu</i>)	am
Phrase 4	私の友達です。 (<i>Are wa watashi no tomodachi desu.</i>)	(That) is a friend of mine.
Word 1	私の (<i>watashi no</i>)	my
Word 2	友達 (<i>tomodachi</i>)	friend
Word 3	です (<i>desu</i>)	is

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In colloquial Japanese, people often use the word うちの (*uchi no*) instead of 私の (*watashi no*). *Uchi no* originally means "inside." So it's used to refer to a group or member of the group that you belong to, like うちの会社 (*uchi no kaisha*), meaning "my company," or うちの父 (*uchi no chichi*), meaning "my father."

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #14 When Are You Leaving?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

14

KANJI

1. いつ出かれますか。
2. いつ出かけるの？
3. あと二時間で出かれます。
4. 二時に出かれます。

KANA

1. いつでかれますか。
2. いつでかけるの？
3. あとにじかんでしゅっぱつします。
4. にじにでかれます。

ROMANIZATION

1. Itsu dekakemasu ka.
2. Itsu dekakeru no.
3. Ato ni-jikan de dekakemasu.
4. Ni-ji ni dekakemasu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. When are you leaving?
2. When are you leaving? (informal)
3. I leave in two hours.
4. I leave at two o'clock.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
に	に	ni	time marking particle	particle
二時	にじ	ni-ji	2 o'clock	phrase
で	で	de	in	particle
いつ	いつ	itsu	when	interrogative
出かけます	でかけます	dekakemasu	leave	verb
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
出かける	でかける	dekakeru	to go out	verb
の	の	no	question marking particle (colloquial)	particle
あと	あと	ato	more	adverb
二時間	にじかん	ni-jikan	two hours	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>そのサッカーの試合はいつ始まりますか？ <i>Sono sakkā no shiai wa itsu hajimarimasu ka?</i></p> <p>When does the football game start?</p>	<p>いつ アメリカ に いきますか。 <i>Itsu Amerika ni ikimasu ka.</i></p> <p>When are you going to America?</p>
<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. O-genki desu ka.</i> <i>B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>

今日は、午後から出かける予定です。
Kyō wa gogo kara dekakru yotei desu.

I plan to go out in the afternoon today.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask when someone is leaving.

	Register	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	formal	いつ 出かれますか。 (<i>Itsu dekakemasu ka.</i>)	When are you leaving?
Word 1		いつ (<i>itsu</i>)	when
Word 2		出かれます (<i>dekakemasu</i>)	leave
Word 3		か (<i>ka</i>)	question marking particle

Phrase 2	formal	いつ出かけるの？ (<i>Itsu dekakeru no.</i>)	When are you leaving? (informal)
Word 1		いつ (<i>itsu</i>)	when
Word 2		出かける (<i>dekakeru</i>)	to go out
Word 3		の (<i>no</i>)	question particle (colloquial)
Phrase 3		あと二時間で出 かけます。 (<i>Ato ni-jikan de dekakemasu.</i>)	I leave in two hours.
Word 1		あと (<i>ato</i>)	more
Word 2		二時間 (<i>ni-jikan</i>)	two hours
Word 3		で (<i>de</i>)	in
Word 4		出かけます (<i>dekakemasu</i>)	leave
Phrase 4		二時に出かけま す。 (<i>Ni-ji ni dekakemasu.</i>)	I leave at two o'clock.
Word 1		二時 (<i>ni-ji</i>)	2 o'clock
Word 2		に (<i>ni</i>)	time marking particle

Word 3

出かけます
(dekakemasu)

leave

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The Japanese are generally said to be very punctual. Public transportation especially must be on time to the minute. For example, if the train is late by even one minute, they always make an announcement to apologize for the delay.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #15

Where Are You Going?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

15

KANJI

1. どこに行きますか。
2. どこに行くの？
3. スーパーに行きます。
4. 仕事に行きます。

KANA

1. どこにいけますか。
2. どこに行くの？
3. スーパーにいけます。
4. しごとにいけます。

ROMANIZATION

1. Doko ni ikimasu ka.
2. Doko ni iku no?
3. Sūpā ni ikimasu.
4. Shigoto ni ikimasu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Where are you going?
2. Where are you going? (informal)
3. I'm going to the supermarket.
4. I'm going to work.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
どこ	どこ	doko	where	interrogative
に	に	ni	to	particle
行きます	いきます	ikimasu	go	verb
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
行く	いく	iku	to go	verb
の	の	no	casual question marker	particle
スーパー	スーパー	sūpā	supermarket	noun
仕事	しごと	shigoto	work	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。

Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.

Where is the taxi stand?

A. 「お元気ですか。」

B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」

A. *O-genki desu ka.*

B. *Hai, sugoku genki desu.*

A: How are you?

B: I'm great!

<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>	<p>明日東京に行きます。 <i>Ashita Tōkyō ni ikimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll go to Tokyo tomorrow.</p>
<p>動物病院に行きました。 <i>Dōbutsu byōin ni ikimashita.</i></p> <p>I went to the animal hospital.</p>	<p>あとでコンビニに行きます。 <i>Ato de konbini ni ikimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll go to the convenience store later.</p>
<p>スーパーでカレーの材料を買った。 <i>Sūpā de karē no zairyō o katta.</i></p> <p>I bought ingredients for curry at the supermarket.</p>	<p>仕事があります。 <i>Shigoto ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>I have my work.</p>
<p>私は、土曜日にも仕事をします。 <i>Watashi wa doyōbi mo shigoto o shimasu.</i></p> <p>I also work on Saturdays.</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask where someone is going.

	Register	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	formal	どこに行きますか。 (<i>Doko ni ikimasu ka.</i>)	Where are you going?
Word 1		どこ (<i>doko</i>)	where
Word 2		に (<i>ni</i>)	to
Word 3		行きます (<i>ikimasu</i>)	go

Word 4		か (ka)	question marking particle
Phrase 2	informal	どこにいくの？ (Doko ni iku no?)	Where are you going? (informal)
Word 1		どこ (doko)	where
Word 2		に (ni)	to
Word 3		行く (iku)	to go
Word 4		の (no)	casual question marker
Phrase 3		スーパーに行き ます。 (Sūpā ni ikimasu.)	I'm going to the supermarket.
Word 1		スーパー (sūpā)	supermarket
Word 2		に (ni)	to
Word 3		行きます (ikimasu)	go
Phrase 4		仕事に行きます。 (Shigoto ni ikimasu.)	I'm going to work.
Word 1		仕事 (shigoto)	work
Word 2		に (ni)	to

Word 3

行きます
(ikimasu)

go

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you're going to a secret place, or when you don't want to tell someone your destination, you can simply answer ちょっとそこまで (*Chotto soko made*). It literally means "Just around the corner," but actually it doesn't have an exact meaning. It's a set phrase.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #16

Asking Directions

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

16

KANJI

1. 駅はどこですか。
2. ここをまっすぐです。
3. 右に曲がってください。
4. 左に曲がってください。

KANA

1. えきはどこですか。
2. ここをまっすぐです。
3. みぎにまがってください。
4. ひだりにまがってください。

ROMANIZATION

1. Eki wa doko desu ka.
2. Koko o massugu desu.
3. Migi ni magatte kudasai.
4. Hidari ni magatte kudasai.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Where is the station?
2. It's straight over here.
3. Turn right.
4. Turn left.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
駅	えき	eki	station	noun
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
どこ	どこ	doko	where	interrogative
です	です	desu	is	copula (polite form)
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
ここ	ここ	koko	here	noun
を	を	o	place of motion marking particle	particle
まっすぐ	まっすぐ	massugu	straight	na-adjective
右	みぎ	migi	right	noun
に	に	ni	to	particle
曲がって	まがって	magatte	turn	verb (te-form)
ください	ください	kudasai	please	phrase
左	ひだり	hidari	left	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>次の駅は大阪です。 <i>Tsugi no eki wa Ōsaka desu.</i></p> <p>The next station is Osaka.</p>	<p>今日はクリスマスです。 <i>Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.</i></p> <p>Today is Christmas.</p>
<p>タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。 <i>Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the taxi stand?</p>	<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. O-genki desu ka.</i> <i>B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>
<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>	<p>ここは禁煙です。 <i>Koko wa kin'en desu.</i></p> <p>This place is no-smoking.</p>
<p>まっすぐ行ってください。 <i>Massugu itte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please go straight.</p>	<p>右に曲がってください。 <i>Migi ni magatte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Turn right.</p>
<p>右にコンビニがあります。 <i>Migi ni konbini ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>There is a convenience store on the right side.</p>	<p>左に曲がってください。 <i>Hidari ni magatte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Turn left.</p>
<p>コンビニの左に、おいしいラーメン屋があります。 <i>Konbini no hidari ni oishii rāmen-ya ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>There is a good ramen shop to the left of the convenience store.</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and understand basic directions.

	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>English</i>
Phrase 1	<p>駅はどこですか。 <i>(Eki wa doko desu ka.)</i></p>	Where is the station?

Word 1	駅 (eki)	station
Word 2	は (wa)	topic marking particle
Word 3	どこ (doko)	where
Word 4	です (desu)	is
Word 5	か (ka)	question marking particle
Phrase 2	ここをまっすぐです。 (Koko o massugu desu.)	It's straight over here.
Word 1	ここ (koko)	here
Word 2	を (o)	place of motion marking particle
Word 3	まっすぐ (massugu)	straight
Word 4	です (desu)	is
Phrase 3	右に曲がってください。 (Migi ni magatte kudasai.)	Turn right.
Word 1	右 (migi)	right
Word 2	に (ni)	to

Word 3	曲がって (magatte)	turn
Word 4	ください (kudasai)	please
Phrase 4	左に曲がってください。 (<i>Hidari ni magatte kudasai.</i>)	Turn left.
Word 1	左 (hidari)	left
Word 2	に (ni)	to
Word 3	曲がって (magatte)	turn
Word 4	ください (kudasai)	please

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Recently, Japan has been implementing measures to become a tourism nation. One of the more noticeable measures include changing road sign displays. In the past, place names were written in both Romanized Japanese and English, for example Mount Fuji-san. After the change, the signs will include only the correct English translation. So, Mt. Fuji-san will become Mt. Fuji and Shibuya-eki Sta., will become simply Shibuya Sta.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #17

Why?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

17

KANJI

1. どうして遅れましたか。
2. 電車に乗れませんでしたから。
3. どうして早く帰りますか。
4. 電車の時間ですから。

KANA

1. どうしておくれましたか。
2. でんしゃにのりおくれたからです。
3. どうしてはやくかえますか。
4. でんしゃのじかんですから。

ROMANIZATION

1. Dōshite okuremashita ka.
2. Densha ni noremassen deshita kara.
3. Dōshite hayaku kaerimasu ka.
4. Densha no jikan desu kara.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Why are you late?
2. Because I missed the train.
3. Why do you leave early?
4. To not miss the train. (Lit. It's the time for the train.)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
どうして	どうして	dōshite	why	interrogative
遅れました	おくれました	okuremashita	to be late (past tense)	verb (past tense)
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
電車	でんしゃ	densha	train	noun
に	に	ni	place marking particle	particle
乗れませんでした	のれませんでした	noremashita	couldn't ride	verb
から	から	kara	because	conjunction
早く	はやく	hayaku	early	adverb
帰ります	かえります	kaerimasu	to leave, to go back	verb
の	の	no	of	particle
時間	じかん	jikan	time	noun
です	です	desu	is	copula (polite form)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. O-genki desu ka.</i> <i>B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
<p>つぎのロンドン行きの電車はあと30分 とう着します。 <i>Tsugi no Rondon iki no densha wa ato sanju- ppun de tōchaku shimasu.</i></p> <p>The next train to London will arrive in thirty minutes.</p>	<p>ジャパン・レイル・パスは、JRのバスや電 車に乗り放題の外国人向け特別割引パスで す。 <i>Japan reiru pasu wa, jeiāru no basu ya densha ni norihōdai no gaikokujin muke tokubetsu waribiki pasu desu.</i></p> <p>Japan Rail pass is a special dicounted flat-rate pass available only to visitors which allows the holder to ride all JR trains as well as buses.</p>
<p>電車の切符を買います。 <i>Densha no kippu o kaimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll buy a train ticket.</p>	<p>東京からパリまで十二時間かかります。 <i>Tōkyō kara pari made jū ni-jikan kakarimasu.</i></p> <p>It takes 12 hours to go to Paris from Tokyo.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer why.

	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	どうして遅れましたか。 (<i>Dōshite okuremashita ka.</i>)	Why are you late?
Word 1	どうして (<i>dōshite</i>)	why
Word 2	遅れました (<i>okuremashita</i>)	to be late (past tense)

Word 3	か (ka)	question marking particle
Phrase 2	電車に乗れませんでしたから。 (<i>Densha ni noremasen deshita kara.</i>)	Because I missed the train.
Word 1	電車 (<i>densha</i>)	train
Word 2	に (<i>ni</i>)	place marking particle
Word 3	乗れませんでした (<i>noremasen deshita</i>)	couldn't ride
Word 4	から (<i>kara</i>)	because
Phrase 3	どうして早く帰りますか。 (<i>Dōshite hayaku kaerimasu ka.</i>)	Why do you leave early?
Word 1	どうして (<i>dōshite</i>)	why
Word 2	早く (<i>hayaku</i>)	early
Word 3	帰ります (<i>kaerimasu</i>)	to leave, to go back
Word 4	か (ka)	question marking particle

Phrase 4	電車の時間ですから。 (<i>Densha no jikan desu kara.</i>)	To not miss the train. (Lit. It's the time for the train.)
Word 1	電車 (<i>densha</i>)	train
Word 2	の (<i>no</i>)	of
Word 3	時間 (<i>jikan</i>)	time
Word 4	です (<i>desu</i>)	is

CULTURAL INSIGHT

As you learned already, Japanese people are punctual, especially in formal situations. Generally, you are supposed to arrive at work and be prepared 5 or 10 minutes ahead of time. So even if your train delays a bit, you shouldn't be late, and mentioning it isn't a good excuse!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #18

Possession

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

18

KANJI

1. ペンを持っていますか。
2. ペン、持ってる？
3. はい、持っています。
4. はい、どうぞ。

KANA

1. ペンをもっていますか。
2. ペンをおもちですか。
3. はい、もっています。
4. はい、どうぞ。

ROMANIZATION

1. Pen o motte imasu ka.
2. Pen, motte ru?
3. Hai, motte imasu.
4. Hai, dōzo.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Do you have a pen?
2. Do you have a pen? (informal)
3. Yes, I have one.
4. Yes, here you are.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
どうぞ	どうぞ	dōzo	here you are	phrase
ペン	ペン	pen	pen	noun
を	を	o	object marking particle	particle
います	います	imasu	am, are, is	verb
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
る	る	ru	am, are, is (informal version)	verb
はい	はい	hai	yes	expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>そのペンは誰のですか。 <i>Sono pen wa dare no desu ka.</i></p> <p>Whose pen is it?</p>	<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. O-genki desu ka.</i> <i>B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>
---	--

1ドルは、何円ですか。
Ichī-doru wa nan-en desu ka.

How many yen is it to one dollar?

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to talk about possession.

	Register	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	formal	ペンを持っていますか。 (<i>Pen o motte imasu ka.</i>)	Do you have a pen?
Word 1		ペン (<i>pen</i>)	pen
Word 2		を (<i>o</i>)	object marking particle
Word 3		持って (<i>motte</i>)	have
Word 4		います (<i>imasu</i>)	am, are, is
Word 5		か (<i>ka</i>)	question marking particle
Phrase 2	informal	ペン、持ってる？ (<i>Pen, motte ru?</i>)	Do you have a pen? (informal)
Word 1		ペン (<i>pen</i>)	pen

Word 2	持って (<i>motte</i>)	have
Word 3	る (<i>ru</i>)	am, are, is (informal version)
Phrase 3	はい、持っています。 (<i>Hai, motte imasu.</i>)	Yes, I have one.
Word 1	はい (<i>hai</i>)	yes
Word 2	持って (<i>motte</i>)	have
Word 3	います (<i>imasu</i>)	am, are, is
Phrase 4	はい、どうぞ。 (<i>Hai, dōzo.</i>)	Yes, here you are.
Word 1	はい (<i>hai</i>)	yes
Word 2	どうぞ (<i>dōzo</i>)	here you are

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you ask Japanese people, お守りを持っていますか。 (*Omamori o motte imasu ka*), "Do you have *omamori*?", many people would say はい、持っています。 (*Hai, motte imasu.*) meaning "Yes, I have." *Omamori* is usually a tiny and flat bag shaped charm, made of a textile. It's used for praying for the success of some important examination or game, safety while driving or sailing, and so on. You can buy *omamori* at shrines and temples for yourself or to give them to someone special to you.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #19

Using Negation

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

19

KANJI

1. ペンを持っていません。
2. 時間がありません。
3. 知りません。
4. 分かりません。

KANA

1. ペンをもっていないせん。
2. じかんがありません。
3. しりません。
4. わかりません。

ROMANIZATION

1. Pen o motte imasen.
2. Jikan ga arimasen.
3. Shirimasen.
4. Wakarimasen.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I don't have a pen.
2. I don't have time.
3. I don't know.
4. I don't understand.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
ペン	ペン	pen	pen	noun
を	を	o	object marking particle	particle
持っていません	もっていません	motte imasen	don't have (polite)	phrase
時間	じかん	jikan	time	noun
が	が	ga	subject marking particle	particle
ありません	ありません	arimasen	there is not	verb (negative form)
知りません	しりません	shirimasen	do not know.	verb (negative form)
分かりません	わかりません	wakarimasen	do not understand	verb (negative form)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>そのペンは誰のですか。 <i>Sono pen wa dare no desu ka.</i></p> <p>Whose pen is it?</p>	<p>東京からパリまで十二時間かかります。 <i>Tōkyō kara pari made jū ni-jikan kakarimasu.</i></p> <p>It takes 12 hours to go to Paris from Tokyo.</p>
---	--

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to state essential negative statements.

	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>English</i>
Phrase 1	ペンを持っていません。 (<i>Pen o motte imasen.</i>)	I don't have a pen.
Word 1	ペン (<i>pen</i>)	pen
Word 2	を (<i>o</i>)	object marking particle
Word 3	持っていません (<i>motte imasen</i>)	don't have (polite)
Phrase 2	時間がありません。 (<i>Jikan ga arimasen.</i>)	I don't have time.
Word 1	時間 (<i>jikan</i>)	time
Word 2	が (<i>ga</i>)	subject marking particle
Word 3	ありません (<i>arimasen</i>)	there is not
Phrase 3	知りません。 (<i>Shirimasen.</i>)	I don't know.
Word 1	知りません (<i>shirimasen</i>)	do not know.
Phrase 4	分かりません。 (<i>Wakarimasen.</i>)	I don't understand.

Word 1

分かりません
(*wakarimasen*)

do not understand

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you ask Japanese people for information about their country, such as the population, the area, or the GDP, some might say *分かりません* (*wakarimasen*) meaning "I don't know." It's said that Japanese people are not very familiar with internal affairs. How about you?

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #20 Talking about Your Likes

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

20

KANJI

1. チョコレートは好きですか。
2. 甘いものは好き?
3. はい、好きです。
4. はい、大好きです。

KANA

1. チョコレートはすきですか。
2. あまいものはすき?
3. はい、すきです。
4. はい、だいすきです。

ROMANIZATION

1. Chokorēto wa suki desu ka.
2. Amai mono wa suki?
3. Hai, suki desu.
4. Hai, daisuki desu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Do you like chocolate?
2. Do you like sweets? (informal)
3. Yes I like it.
4. Yes, I love it.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
大好き	だいすき	daisuki	to love, really likable	na-adjective
チョコレート	チョコレート	chokorēto	chocolate	noun
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
好き	すき	suki	to like, likable	na-adjective
です	です	desu	am, are, is	copula (polite form)
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
甘いもの	あまいもの	amai mono	sweets	phrase
はい	はい	hai	yes	expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>好きな人にチョコレートをあげる。 <i>Sukina hito ni chokorēto wo ageru.</i></p> <p>I give chocolate to a person whom I love.</p>	<p>チョコレートなしでは生きていけない、という人もいる。 <i>Chokorēto nashi de wa ikite ikenai, to iu hito mo iru.</i></p> <p>Some people just can't live without chocolate.</p>
---	--

<p>チーズケーキとチョコレートケーキを買った。</p> <p><i>Chīzukēki to chokorēto kēki o katta.</i></p> <p>I bought cheese cake and chocolate cake.</p>	<p>今日はクリスマスです。</p> <p><i>Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.</i></p> <p>Today is Christmas.</p>
<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」</p> <p>B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」</p> <p><i>A. O-genki desu ka.</i></p> <p><i>B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you?</p> <p>B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。</p> <p><i>Ichī-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer affirmatively to the question.

	Register	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	formal	チョコレートは好きですか。 (<i>Chokorēto wa suki desu ka.</i>)	Do you like chocolate?
Word 1		チョコレート (<i>chokorēto</i>)	chocolate
Word 2		は (<i>wa</i>)	topic marking particle
Word 3		好き (<i>suki</i>)	to like, likable
Word 4		です (<i>desu</i>)	am, are, is
Word 5		か (<i>ka</i>)	question marking particle

Phrase 2	informal	甘いものは好き? (<i>Amai mono wa suki?</i>)	Do you like sweets? (informal)
Word 1		甘いもの (<i>amai mono</i>)	sweets
Word 2		は (<i>wa</i>)	topic marking particle
Word 3		好き (<i>suki</i>)	to like, likable
Phrase 3		はい、好きです。 (<i>Hai, suki desu.</i>)	Yes I like it.
Word 1		はい (<i>hai</i>)	yes
Word 2		好き (<i>suki</i>)	to like, likable
Word 3		です (<i>desu</i>)	am, are, is
Phrase 4		はい、大好きです。 (<i>Hai, daisuki desu.</i>)	Yes, I love it.
Word 1		はい (<i>hai</i>)	yes
Word 2		大好き (<i>daisuki</i>)	to love, really likable
Word 3		です (<i>desu</i>)	am, are, is

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Most Japanese people would definitely like 温泉 (*onsen*) or "hot springs." Even those who usually just take quick showers probably like *onsen*. In Japan, there is a countless number of *onsen* everywhere. Why don't you try visiting *onsen* when you come to Japan?

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #21

Talking about Your Dislikes

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

21

KANJI

1. キャラメルは苦手です。
2. キャラメルは好きではありません。
3. キャラメルは嫌いです。
4. キャラメルは大嫌いです。

KANA

1. キャラメルはにがてです。
2. キャラメルはすきではありません。
3. キャラメルはきらいです。
4. キャラメルはだいきらいです。

ROMANIZATION

1. Kyarameru wa nigate desu.
2. Kyarameru wa suki de wa arimasen.
3. Kyarameru wa kirai desu.
4. Kyarameru wa wa daikirai desu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I don't like caramel.
2. I don't like caramel.
3. I hate caramel.
4. I really hate caramel.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
ではありません	ではありません	de wa arimasen	am, are, is not	copula (polite negat)
嫌い	きらい	kirai	to dislike, dislikable	na-adjective
の	の	no	nominalization particle	particle
大嫌い	だいきらい	daikirai	to hate very much, very unlikable	na-adjective
キャラメル	キャラメル	kyarameru	caramel	noun
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
苦手	にがて	nigate	poor at, not good at dealing with	na-adjective
です	です	desu	am, are, is	copula (polite form)
好き	すき	suki	to like, likable	na-adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

今日はクリスマスです。
Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.

Today is Christmas.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to say that you don't like something.

	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>English</i>
Phrase 1	キャラメルは苦手です。 (<i>Kyarameru wa nigate desu.</i>)	I don't like caramel.
Word 1	キャラメル (<i>kyarameru</i>)	caramel
Word 2	は (<i>wa</i>)	topic marking particle
Word 3	苦手 (<i>nigate</i>)	poor at, not good at dealing with
Word 4	です (<i>desu</i>)	am, are, is
Phrase 2	キャラメルは好きではありません。 (<i>Kyarameru wa suki de wa arimasen.</i>)	I don't like caramel.
Word 1	キャラメル (<i>kyarameru</i>)	caramel
Word 2	は (<i>wa</i>)	topic marking particle

Word 3	好き (suki)	to like, likable
Word 4	ではありません (de wa arimasen)	am, are, is not
Phrase 3	キャラメルは嫌いです。 (<i>Kyarameru wa kirai desu.</i>)	I hate caramel.
Word 1	キャラメル (<i>kyarameru</i>)	caramel
Word 2	は (<i>wa</i>)	topic marking particle
Word 3	嫌い (<i>kirai</i>)	to dislike, dislikable
Word 4	です (<i>desu</i>)	am, are, is
Phrase 4	キャラメルは大嫌いです。 (<i>Kyarameru wa wa daikirai desu.</i>)	I really hate caramel.
Word 1	キャラメル (<i>kyarameru</i>)	caramel
Word 2	の (<i>no</i>)	nominalization particle
Word 3	は (<i>wa</i>)	topic marking particle
Word 4	大嫌い (<i>daikirai</i>)	to hate very much, very unlikable

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Japanese people tend to avoid saying negative words such as 嫌いです (*kirai desu*) and 大嫌いです (*daikirai desu*). They usually prefer euphemistic and indecisive expressions. So it's better to use 苦手です (*nigate desu*), meaning "be bad at," unless you have good reasons to dislike something.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #22

Ordering at a Restaurant

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

22

KANJI

1. メニュー、ありますか。
2. おすすめは何ですか。
3. コーヒー、ください。
4. コーヒー、お願いします。

KANA

1. メニュー、ありますか。
2. おすすめはなんですか。
3. コーヒー、ください。
4. コーヒー、おねがいします。

ROMANIZATION

1. Menyū, arimasu ka.
2. O-susume wa nan desu ka.
3. Kōhī, kudasai.
4. Kōhī, onegai shimasu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Can you show me the menu? (Lit. Do you have a menu?)
2. What do you recommend?
3. Coffee, please.
4. I would like a coffee.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
メニュー	メニュー	menyū	menu	noun
あります	あります	arimasu	as you have, as there is	verb
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
おすすめ	おすすめ	o-susume	recommendation	noun
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
何	なん	nan	what	interrogative
です	です	desu	am, are, is	copula (polite form)
コーヒー	コーヒー	kōhī	coffee	noun
ください	ください	kudasai	please give me	phrase
お願いします	おねがいします	onagai shimasu	please	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>メニューをください。 <i>menyū o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can I have a menu?</p>	<p>英語のメニューを下さい。 <i>Eigo no menyū o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can you give me an English menu?</p>
<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 A. <i>O-genki desu ka.</i> B. <i>Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichī-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
<p>おすすめは何ですか。 <i>O-susume wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What do you recommend?</p>	<p>今日はクリスマスです。 <i>Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.</i></p> <p>Today is Christmas.</p>
<p>なにがすきですか。 <i>Nani ga suki desu ka.</i></p> <p>What do you like?</p>	<p>何を飲みますか。 <i>Nani o nomimasu ka.</i></p> <p>What would you like to drink?</p>
<p>コーヒーを飲みませんか。 <i>Kōhī o nomimasen ka.</i></p> <p>Would you like to drink some coffee?</p>	<p>よろしくお願ひします。 <i>Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Pleased to meet you.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to order at a restaurant or coffee shop.

	Japanese	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	メニュー、あり ますか。 (<i>Menyū, arimasu ka.</i>)	Can you show me the menu? (Lit. Do you have a menu?)	
Word 1	メニュー (<i>menyū</i>)	menu	

Word 2	あります (arimasu)	as you have, as there is
Word 3	か (ka)	question marking particle
Phrase 2	おすすめは何で すか。 (O-susume wa nan desu ka.)	What do you recommend?
Word 1	おすすめ (o-susume)	recommendation
Word 2	は (wa)	topic marking particle
Word 3	何 (nan)	what
Word 4	です (desu)	am, are, is
Word 5	か (ka)	question marking particle
Phrase 3	コーヒー、くださ い。 (Kōhī, kudasai.)	Coffee, please. Polite expression.
Word 1	コーヒー (kōhī)	coffee
Word 2	ください (kudasai)	please give me

Phrase 4	コーヒー、お願い します。 (<i>Kōhī, onegai shimasu.</i>)	I would like a coffee.	Very polite expression.
Word 1	コーヒー (<i>kōhī</i>)	coffee	
Word 2	お願いします (<i>onegai shimasu</i>)	please	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In some *rāmen* shops or eateries in Japan, there are vending machines for meal tickets. It's a self-ordering system where you buy a ticket at the machine and give it to a server.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #23

Asking for the Bill

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

23

KANJI

1. お会計、お願いします。
2. お会計はどこですか。
3. すみません、おつりが違います。
4. おつりはありません。

KANA

1. おかいけい、おねがいします。
2. おかいけいはどこですか。
3. すみません、おつりがちがいます。
4. おつりはありません。

ROMANIZATION

1. O-kaikei, onegai shimasu.
2. O-kaikei wa doko desu ka.
3. Sumimasen, o-tsuri ga chigaimasu.
4. O-tsuri wa irimasen.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. The bill, please.
2. Where can I pay the bill? (Lit. 'Where is the bill?')
3. Excuse me, the change is wrong.
4. Keep the change. (Lit. 'I don't need the change.')

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
いりません	いりません	irimasen	do not need	verb
違います	ちがいます	chigaimasu	is wrong	verb
お会計	おかいけい	o-kaikei	check, bill	noun (polite)
お願いします	おねがいします	onagai shimasu	please	phrase
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
どこ	どこ	doko	where	interrogative
です	です	desu	is	copula (polite form)
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
すみません	すみません	sumimasen	Sorry, excuse me	expression
おつり	おつり	o-tsuri	change	noun
が	が	ga	subject marking particle	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>お会計お願いします。 <i>O-kaikei o-negai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Check, please.</p>	<p>よろしくお願いします。 <i>Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Pleased to meet you.</p>
<p>今日はクリスマスです。 <i>Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.</i></p> <p>Today is Christmas.</p>	<p>タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。 <i>Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the taxi stand?</p>
<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. O-genki desu ka.</i> <i>B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
<p>すみません。質問があります。 <i>Sumimasen. Shitsumon ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>Excuse me. I have a question.</p>	<p>おつり、ありますか。 <i>O-tsuri, arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have change?</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask for the bill and check the change.

	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	お会計、お願いします。 (<i>O-kaikei, onegai shimasu.</i>)	The bill, please.
Word 1	お会計 (<i>o-kaikei</i>)	check, bill
Word 2	お願いします (<i>onegai shimasu</i>)	please

Phrase 2	お会計はどこですか。 (<i>O-kaikei wa doko desu ka.</i>)	Where can I pay the bill? (Lit. 'Where is the bill?')
Word 1	お会計 (<i>o-kaikei</i>)	check, bill
Word 2	は (<i>wa</i>)	topic marking particle
Word 3	どこ (<i>doko</i>)	where
Word 4	です (<i>desu</i>)	is
Word 5	か (<i>ka</i>)	question marking particle
Phrase 3	すみません、おつりが違 います。 (<i>Sumimasen, o-tsuri ga chigaimasu.</i>)	Excuse me, the change is wrong.
Word 1	すみません (<i>sumimasen</i>)	sorry, excuse me
Word 2	おつり (<i>o-tsuri</i>)	change
Word 3	が (<i>ga</i>)	subject marking particle
Word 4	違います (<i>chigaimasu</i>)	is wrong
Phrase 4	おつりはいりません。 (<i>O-tsuri wa irimasen.</i>)	Keep the change. (Lit. I don't need the change.)

Word 1	おつり (<i>o-tsuru</i>)	change
Word 2	は (<i>wa</i>)	topic marking particle
Word 3	いりません (<i>irimasen</i>)	do not need

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Generally, there's no tradition of tipping in Japan. So if you silently leave your tip on the table after paying at restaurant, they might think you have forgotten your money! So it'd be better to have a word with the staff or to give them your tip directly.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #24

Offering an Invitation

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

24

KANJI

1. 金曜日の夜、予定はありますか。
2. 金曜日の夜、あいてる？
3. 映画に行きます。
4. 一緒に行きませんか。

KANA

1. きんようびのよる、よていはありますか。
2. きんようびのよる、ごよていはございますか。
3. えいがにいきます。
4. いっしょにいきませんか。

ROMANIZATION

1. Kin-yōbi no yoru, yotei wa arimasu ka.
2. Kin-yōbi no yoru, go-yotei wa gozaimasu ka.
3. Eiga ni ikimasu.
4. Issho ni ikimasen ka.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Do you have plans on Friday night?
2. Are you free on Friday night?
3. I'm going to the movies.
4. Will you join?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
映画	えいが	eiga	movies	noun
行きません	いきません	ikimasen	not to go	verb (negative form)
金曜日の夜	きんようびのよる	kin-yōbi no yoru	Friday night	phrase
予定	よてい	yotei	plan	noun
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
あります	あります	arimasu	there is	verb
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
金曜日	きんようび	kin-yōbi	Friday	noun
の	の	no	of	particle
夜	よる	yoru	night	noun
あいてる	あいてる	aite ru	to have free time (informal)	verb (informal)
に	に	ni	to	particle
行きます	いきます	ikimasu	go	verb
一緒に	いっしょに	issho ni	together	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>予定があります。 <i>Yotei ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>I have a plan.</p>	<p>今夜、予定がありますか。 <i>Konya, yotei ga arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have any plans tonight?</p>
<p>今日はクリスマスです。 <i>Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.</i></p> <p>Today is Christmas.</p>	<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. O-genki desu ka.</i> <i>B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>
<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>	<p>金曜日の夜はよく同僚と飲みに行きます。 <i>Kin-yōbi no yoru wa yoku dōryō to nomi ni ikimasu.</i></p> <p>I often go for drinks with my colleagues on Friday nights.</p>
<p>今週の金曜日の予定は何ですか。 <i>Konshū no kin-yōbi no yotei wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What's your plan for this Friday night?</p>	<p>平日の夜、私はジムに行きます。 <i>Heijitsu no yoru, watashi wa jimu ni ikimasu.</i></p> <p>I go to the gym on weeknights.</p>
<p>僕たち一緒にパーティーに行こうよ。 <i>Bokutachi issho ni pātī ni ikō yo.</i></p> <p>We should go to the party together.</p>	<p>いっしょにコンサートに行きましょう。 <i>Issho ni konsāto ni ikimashō.</i></p> <p>Let's go to a concert together.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to invite someone out.

	Register	Japanese	English
Phrase 1	formal	<p>金曜日の夜、予定 はありますか。 (<i>Kin-yōbi no yoru,</i> <i>yotei wa arimasu</i> <i>ka.</i>)</p>	Do you have plans on Friday night?

Word 1		金曜日の夜 (<i>kin-yōbi no yoru</i>)	Friday night
Word 2		予定 (<i>yotei</i>)	plan
Word 3		は (<i>wa</i>)	topic marking particle
Word 4		あります (<i>arimasu</i>)	there is
Word 5		か (<i>ka</i>)	question marking particle
Phrase 2	informal	金曜日の夜、あいてる？ (<i>Kin-yōbi no yoru, go-yotei wa gozaimasu ka.</i>)	Are you free on Friday night?
Word 1		金曜日 (<i>kin-yōbi</i>)	Friday
Word 2		の (<i>no</i>)	of
Word 3		夜 (<i>yoru</i>)	night
Word 4		あいてる (<i>aite ru</i>)	to have free time (informal)
Phrase 3		映画に行きます。 (<i>Eiga ni ikimasu.</i>)	I'm going to the movies.
Word 1		映画 (<i>eiga</i>)	movies

Word 2	に (ni)	to
Word 3	行きます (ikimasu)	go
Phrase 4	一緒に行きませ んか。 (<i>Issho ni ikimase n ka.</i>)	Will you join?
Word 1	一緒に (<i>issho ni</i>)	together
Word 2	行きません (<i>ikimasen</i>)	not to go
Word 3	か (<i>ka</i>)	question marking particle

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Japanese people have many drinking parties at work or with friends at the end of the year, New Year's, cherry blossom season, to welcome or send-off someone, and even on ordinary days. Even if you cannot drink at all, many restaurants have recently started serving non-alcoholic cocktails. Give it a try!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute Japanese #25 On the Phone

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

25

KANJI

1. もしもし
2. リサです。
3. ピーターさんはいますか。
4. またあとで電話します。

KANA

1. もしもし
2. リサです。
3. ピーターさんはいますか。
4. またあとででんわします。

ROMANIZATION

1. Moshi moshi.
2. Risa desu.
3. Pītā san wa imasu ka.
4. Mata ato de denwa shimasu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Hello. (answering the phone)
2. This is Risa.
3. May I talk to Peter?
4. I'll call again later.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
もしもし	もしもし	moshi moshi	hello (on the telephone)	expression
リサ	リサ	Risa	Risa, person first name	proper noun
です	です	desu	am	
ピーター	ピーター	Pitā	Peter	proper noun
さん	さん	san	polite name suffix	name suffix
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
います	います	imasu	to be (animate), to exist; -masu form	verb (honorific form)
か	か	ka	question marking particle	question marking par
また	また	mata	again	adverb
あとで	あとで	atode	later	phrase
電話	でんわ	denwa	phone	noun
します	します	shimasu	to do	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>もしもし、坂本ですが、どちら様ですか。 <i>Moshimoshi, Sakamoto desu ga, dochira sama desu ka.</i></p> <p>Hello, this is Sakamoto. May I ask who's speaking?</p>	<p>私の名前は、ピーターです。 <i>Watashi no namae wa Pītā desu.</i></p> <p>My name is Peter.</p>
<p>今日はクリスマスです。 <i>Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.</i></p> <p>Today is Christmas.</p>	<p>テーブルの下にねこがいます。 <i>Tēburu no shita ni neko ga imasu.</i></p> <p>There is a cat under the table.</p>
<p>A. 「お元気ですか。」 B. 「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. O-genki desu ka.</i> <i>B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i></p> <p>A: How are you? B: I'm great!</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
<p>また会いたいです。 <i>Mata aitai desu.</i></p> <p>I want to meet you again.</p>	<p>また、会いましょう。 <i>Mata, aimashō.</i></p> <p>Let's meet again.</p>
<p>あとでコンビニに行きます。 <i>Ato de konbini ni ikimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll go to the convenience store later.</p>	<p>電話を持っていますか。 <i>Denwa o motte masu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have a phone?</p>
<p>彼は帰り道で電話を失くした。 <i>Kare wa kaerimichi de denwa o nakushita.</i></p> <p>He lost his phone on his way home.</p>	<p>いまから宿題をします。 <i>Ima kara shukudai o shimasu.</i></p> <p>I'm going to do my homework now.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to understand the basic vocabulary on the phone.

	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>English</i>
Phrase 1	もしもし (<i>Moshi moshi</i>)	Hello. (answering the phone)

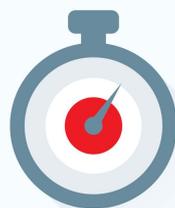
Word 1	もしもし (moshi moshi)	hello (on the telephone)
Phrase 2	リサです。 (Risa desu.)	This is Risa.
Word 1	リサ (Risa)	Risa, person first name
Word 2	です (desu)	am
Phrase 3	ピーターさんはいますか。 (Pītā san wa imasu ka.)	May I talk to Peter?
Word 1	ピーター (Pītā)	Peter
Word 2	さん (san)	polite name suffix
Word 3	は (wa)	topic marking particle
Word 4	います (imasu)	to be (animate), to exist; -masu form
Word 5	か (ka)	question marking particle
Phrase 4	またあとで電話します。 (Mata ato de denwa shimasu.)	I'll call again later.
Word 1	また (mata)	again
Word 2	あとで (ato de)	later

Word 3	電話 (denwa)	phone
Word 4	します (shimasu)	to do

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The expression もしもし (*moshi moshi*) is very common when you give or receive a call. However, in formal situations like in business, people don't use it. Instead, they say はい (*hai*) or ありがとうございます (*arigatō gozaimasu*) followed by the company's name or their family name.

JapanesePod101.com



3 MINUTE JAPANESE

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

	Intro	13	Who Is It?
1	Self Introduction	14	When Are You Leaving?
2	Greetings	15	Where Are You Going?
3	Manners	16	Asking Directions
4	Asking How Someone Is	17	Why?
5	Making Apologies	18	Possession
6	Refusing Politely	19	Using Negation
7	Do You Speak English?	20	Talking about Your Likes
8	Talking About Your Age	21	Talking about Your Dislikes
9	Using Adjectives	22	Ordering at a Restaurant
10	Asking How Much Something Costs	23	Asking for the Bill
11	How to Understand Prices	24	Offering an Invitation
12	Asking What Someone is Doing	25	On the Phone